

PA

2087

B83

1873

# LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

HENRY M. MUNS, LL.D.

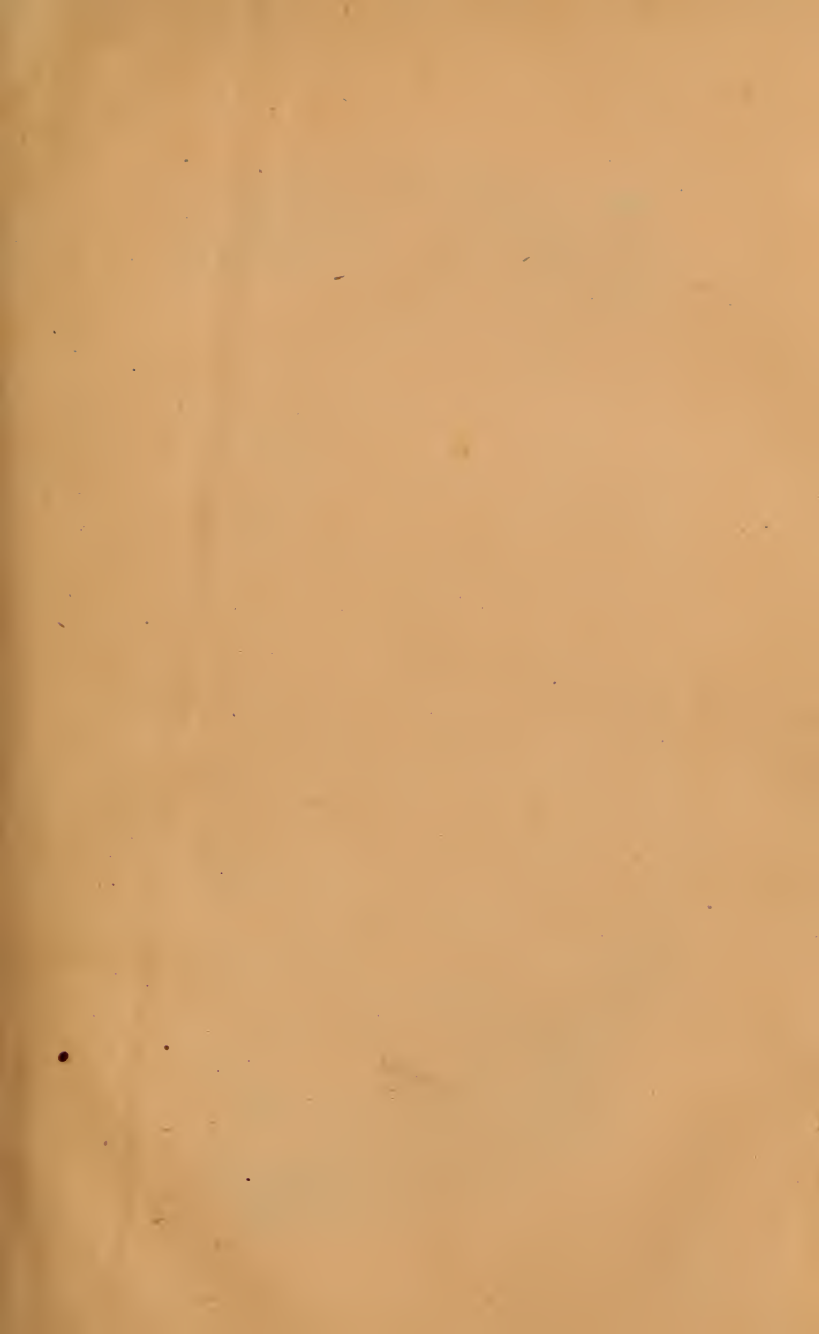
LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

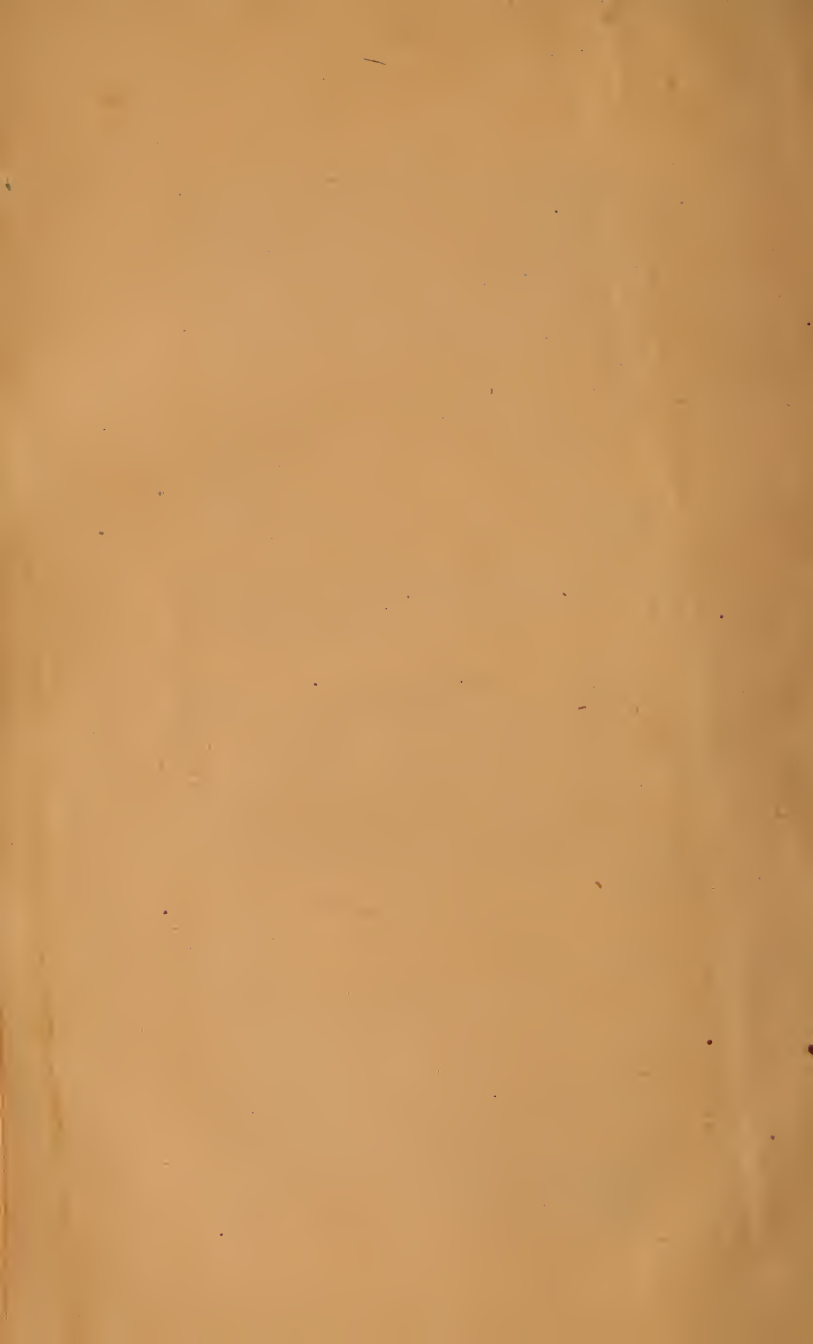
Chap. 30 Copyright No. ....

Shelf PA 2057

B 83 1873

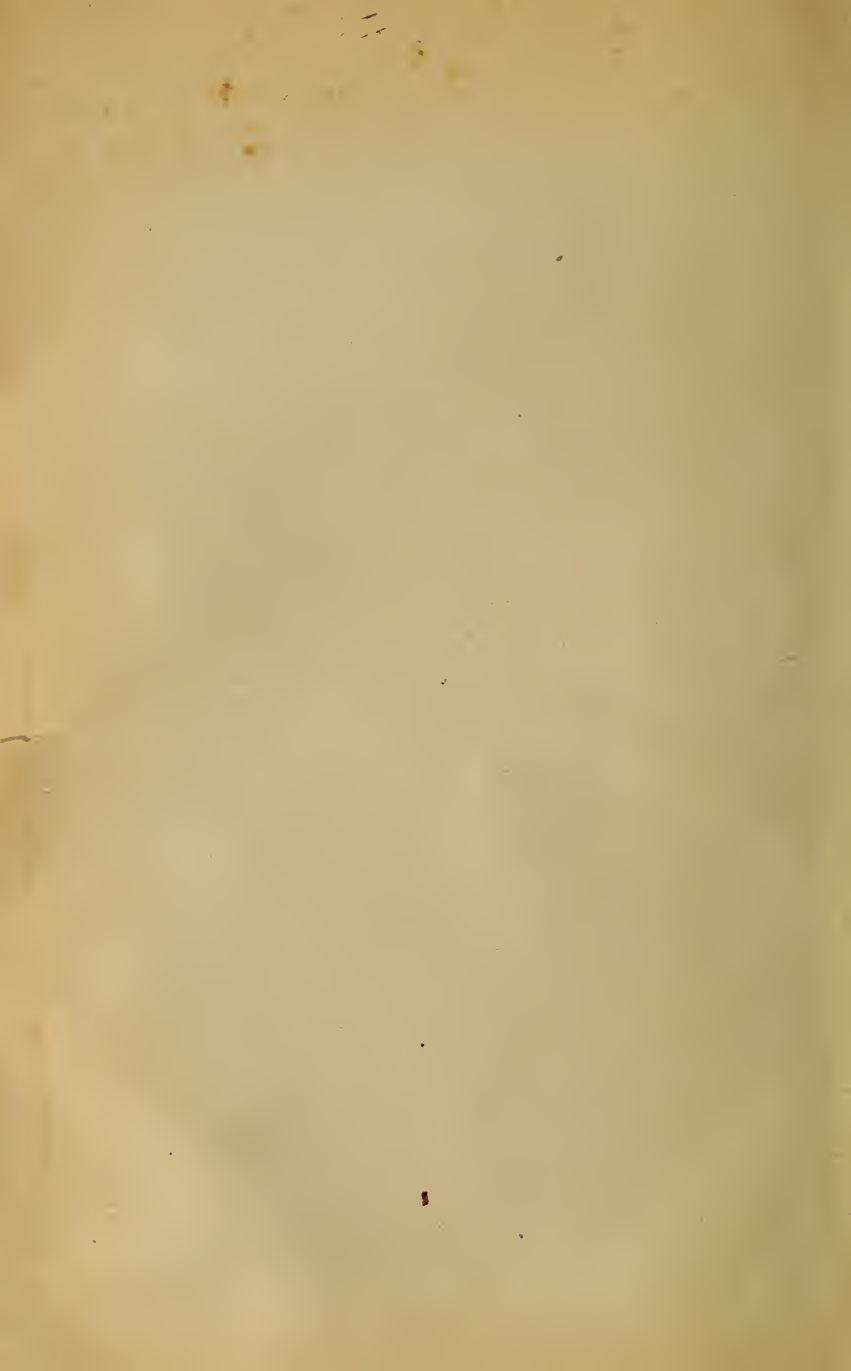
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.











27018.48



# LATIN GRAMMAR

A

COMPENDIOUS MANUAL

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

39

---

By HENRY M. BRUNS, LL. D.

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE IN THE COLLEGE OF CHARLESTON.

---

2

LOUISVILLE  
JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY  
PUBLISHERS

PA2087  
B83  
1873

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1873, by  
JOHN P. MORTON & COMPANY,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

ELECTROTYPED BY  
ROBERT ROWELL,  
LOUISVILLE, KY.

## PREFACE.

---

The design of this little work—originally prepared for the use of the pupils of the High-school of Charleston, and now enlarged—is so obvious that it needs no explanation, and its utility is so evident that it needs no commendation; and while it is specially intended for *school-boys*, and contains nothing with which they ought not to be perfectly familiar, it will be found a convenient **HAND-BOOK** for those who have passed that grade.

The answers, it will be seen, are so constructed as to be independent of the questions; so that the book can be used for continuous recitation or catechetically, as the teacher may prefer.

In the Prosody the metres have been confined to hexameters and the metres of Horace, as when these are mastered, and the rules of prosody have been thoroughly committed and their application understood, other metres can be readily acquired as they present themselves.

The form in which the Rules for the Gender of Nouns is introduced will prove a master-key to that part of Latin Grammar. The rude jingle in which these rules are couched will only make them more attractive to boys, who will, for that very reason, commit them with more readiness and pleasure, and remember them more perfectly than if they

possessed all the smoothness and elegance of the poetry of Tennyson or Longfellow.

The Synoptical Tables in the Appendix, showing case and tense-endings of the several declensions and conjugations, will prove very useful to the pupil, and will greatly aid him to obtain a comprehensive and exact conception of Latin; for if he has thoroughly learned the tabulated case and tense-terminals, by affixing them to the proper root a word may be easily carried through all its inflections.

The book has not been divided into lessons *purposely*, as this is best left to the teacher, who can apportion them according to the capacity and advancement of his pupils.

# CONTENTS.

## ETYMOLOGY.

LETTERS .....	9
SYLLABLES .....	11
ACCENT .....	11
QUANTITY.....	12
WORDS.....	12
SUBSTANTIVES, OR NOUNS.....	13
<i>Person and Gender</i> .....	13
Gender Rules.....	14
<i>Number and Case</i> .....	15
<i>Declension</i> .....	16
General Rules for Declension.....	16
<i>First Declension</i> .....	17
<i>Second Declension</i> .....	18
Vocative of Proper Names, etc.....	21
<i>Third Declension</i> .....	22
Exceptions in Declension.....	27
Irregular Nouns .....	28
Greek Nouns.....	28
<i>Fourth Declension</i> .....	29
<i>Fifth Declension</i> .....	31
Compound Nouns.....	32
Variable Nouns.....	33
ADJECTIVES .....	34
<i>First and Second Declensions</i> .....	34
<i>Third Declension</i> .....	36
<i>Numeral Adjectives</i> .....	39
<i>Correlatives</i> .....	43
<i>Numeral Adverbs</i> .....	43
<i>Comparison of Adjectives</i> .....	44
Irregular and Defective Comparison.....	44
PRONOUNS .....	47
<i>Adjective Pronouns</i> .....	49
Possessives .....	49
Demonstratives .....	49
<i>Relative Pronouns</i> .....	51
<i>Interrogative Pronouns</i> .....	52
<i>Indefinite Pronouns</i> .....	53

VERBS .....	54
<i>Voice</i> .....	56
<i>Moods</i> .....	56
<i>Tenses</i> .....	57
English of the Subjunctive Mood.....	59
English of the Imperative Mood.....	60
<i>Participles</i> .....	60
<i>Gerunds—Gerundives—Supines</i> .....	61
<i>Conjugation</i> .....	62
The Irregular Verb "Sum" .....	67
First Conjugation.....	69
Second Conjugation.....	74
Third Conjugation.....	77
Fourth Conjugation.....	83
<i>Dependent Verbs</i> .....	86
<i>Neuter Passive Verbs</i> .....	86
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i> .....	87
<i>Irregular Verbs</i> .....	88
<i>Defective Verbs</i> .....	94
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i> .....	96
ADVERBS.....	99
<i>Derivation of Adverbs</i> .....	99
<i>Comparison of Adverbs</i> .....	101
PREPOSITIONS.....	102
<i>Inseparable Prepositions</i> .....	103
CONJUNCTIONS .....	104
INTERJECTIONS .....	105

## SYNTAX.

SENTENCES .....	106
GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.....	108
GOVERNMENT OF THE OBLIQUE CASES.....	108
CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.....	109
CONCORD .....	110
A Substantive with a Substantive.....	110
Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.....	111
Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.....	112
Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative.....	113
GOVERNMENT OF THE GENITIVE CASE.....	114
The Genitive governed by a Noun.....	114
Genitive governed by an Adjective used as a Substantive.....	115
The Genitive governed by Adjectives.....	116
The Genitive governed by Verbs.....	117
GOVERNMENT OF THE DATIVE CASE.....	118
The Dative governed by Nouns.....	118
The Dative governed by Adjectives.....	119
The Dative governed by Verbs.....	119
Special Rules.....	120
Impersonal Verbs.....	121
Verbs which govern Two Datives.....	122



ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.....	122
GOVERNMENT OF THE VOCATIVE CASE.....	123
GOVERNMENT OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.....	123
The Ablative governed by Nouns.....	123
The Ablative governed by Adjectives.....	124
The Ablative with the Comparative Degree.....	124
Ablative Absolute.....	125
Ablative of Price.....	126
Ablative of Measure or Distance.....	126
Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, etc.....	127
Limiting Expressions—Ablative—Accusative.....	127
The Ablative governed by Verbs.....	128
VERBS WHICH GOVERN TWO CASES.....	129
Accusative and Genitive.....	129
Accusative and Dative.....	130
Two Accusatives.....	131
Accusative and Ablative.....	131
Passive Verbs.....	132
PLACE—NAMES OF TOWNS.....	133
TIME.....	135
CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.....	135
GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.....	136
SYNTAX OF THE VERB.....	137
Moods .....	137
Sequence of Tenses.....	138
Subjunctive Mood after Tenses.....	139
Subjunctive Mood after the Relative.....	140
Construction of the Imperative.....	140
Construction of the Infinitive.....	141
Historical Infinitive.....	143
Oratio Directa and Oratio Obliqua.....	143
Participles .....	144
Gerunds.....	144
Gerundives .....	145
Supines.....	146
CONJUNCTIONS.....	147

## PROSODY.

GENERAL RULES.....	150
SPECIAL RULES.....	151
INCREASE OF NOUNS.....	152
INCREASE OF VERBS.....	154
PENULT SYLLABLES.....	155
FINAL SYLLABLES.....	157
DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.....	160
VERSIFICATION.....	161
Cæsural Pause.....	161
Heroic Hexameter.....	162
Figures of Scanning.....	163
Figures of Etymology.....	165

VERSIFICATION—(*Continued*).

Figures of Syntax.....	166
Different Kinds of Metre.....	169
Metres of Horace.....	171
Index to Metres of Horace.....	176

## APPENDIX.

SYNOPTICAL TABLES.....	177
Genders .....	177
Declensions—Nouns.....	177
Declensions—Adjectives.....	178
GENDER RULES.....	179
From the Signification.....	179
First Declension.....	180
From the Ending—Second Declension.....	180
Third Declension .....	181
Fourth Declension.....	183
Fifth Declension.....	183
IRREGULAR AND AUXILIARY VERBS.....	183
SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.....	186
LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL VERBS.....	190
First Conjugation.....	190
Second Conjugation.....	191
Third Conjugation.....	195
Fourth Conjugation.....	206
DEPONENT VERBS.....	207
ROMAN ARMY.....	210
TIME .....	211
Day and Night.....	211
Months.....	211
ROMAN MONEY.....	212
MEASURES.....	212

# A MANUAL OF LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## ETYMOLOGY.

### LETTERS.

1. What does Latin Grammar teach?

LATIN GRAMMAR teaches how to speak and write the Latin language correctly.

2. What are the letters of the Latin language?

The LETTERS of the Latin language are the same as those of the English, excepting *k* and *w*; *w* is not used at all, and *k* is used only in words that are strictly Greek.

3. How are these letters divided?

These letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

4. Name the vowels.

The VOWELS are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*.

5. Name the consonants.

The CONSONANTS are *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *x*, *z*; or, more briefly, all but the vowels.

6. How are the consonants divided?

The consonants are divided into *mutes*, *liquids*, and *double consonants*.

7. Which are the mutes, and why are they so called?

The MUTES are *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *k*, *g*, and are so called because, in combination with other letters, they tend to *interrupt* or *stop* the sound of the voice.

8. Which are the liquids, and why are they so called?

The LIQUIDS are *l, m, n, r*, and are so called because of the readiness with which they *flow* into other sounds, and the ease with which they are *changed*, one for another, in combining with other consonants.

9. Which are the double consonants, and why are they so called?

The DOUBLE CONSONANTS are *j, x, z*, and they are so called because they are each equal to two consonants; viz., *j* to *dg*, *x* to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

10. How are *h* and *s* classed?

*H* is not regarded as a letter, but only as a rough breathing; and *s* is called a *sibilant*, or *hissing*, letter.

11. How are consonants classified as to sounds?

Consonants are classified as to sounds,

1. Into *c* sounds; viz., *c, g, q*.
2. Into *p* sounds; viz., *p, b, f, v*.
3. Into *t* sounds; viz., *t, d*.

12. What are letters of the same sound called, and what is their property?

Letters of the same sound are called *cognate* letters, and their property is that of being readily changed, one into another, in combination with other consonants.

13. What is a diphthong?

A DIPHTHONG is the union of two vowels in one sound.

14. How are diphthongs divided?

Diphthongs are divided into *proper* and *improper*.

15. What is a proper diphthong?

A PROPER DIPHTHONG is one in which both the vowels are sounded (see 17).

16. What is an improper diphthong?

AN IMPROPER DIPHTHONG is one in which only one of the vowels is sounded (see 18).

17. How many proper diphthongs are there?

There are *three proper diphthongs*: viz., *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *euge*, *hei*.

18. How many improper diphthongs are there?

There are *two improper diphthongs*: viz., *æ* and *œ*; as in *pennæ*, *cœtus*.

### SYLLABLES.

19. What is a syllable?

A **SYLLABLE** is a distinct sound, uttered by a single impulse of the voice, forming the whole or part of a word.

20. What is a word of one syllable called? Of two syllables? Of three syllables? etc.

A word of *one* syllable is called a *monosyllable*; of *two* syllables, a *dissyllable*; of *three* syllables, a *trisyllable*; and of *more* than three syllables, a *polysyllable*.

21. What is the last syllable of a word called?

The *last syllable* of a word is called the *ultimate* or *final*.

22. What is the syllable before the last called?

The syllable before the last is called the *penultimate* or *penult*.

23. What is the syllable preceding the penult called?

The syllable preceding the penult is called the *antepenult*.

### ACCENT.

24. What is accent?

**ACCENT** is a special *stress* or *force of voice* on a particular syllable of a word, by which that syllable is distinguished from the rest.

25. What are the three rules for accenting Latin words?

The three rules for accenting Latin words are:

1. In words of *two syllables*, the accent is always on the *first*; as in *pu'er*, *ca'nis*, *do'mus*.

2. In words of *more* than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long*, the accent is on the *penult*; as in *honō'res*, *ami'cus*.

3. If the *penult* is *short*, the accent is on the *antepenult*; as in *dom'inus*, *hom'ines*, *op'ëra*.

## QUANTITY.

26. What is quantity?

QUANTITY is the *measure* of a syllable as respects the *time* required to pronounce it. Syllables are either *long*, *short*, or *common*, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

27. What are the four general rules for quantity?

The four general rules for the quantity of syllables are:

1. A diphthong is long; as, *au* in *aurum*, *æ* in *famæ*.
2. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *i* in *folium*, *e* in *dëorum*.
3. A vowel before two single consonants or one double consonant (9) is long; as, *o* in *möllis*, *a* in *ältus*, *e* in *rëx*.
4. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common in poetry, but in prose is short; as, *volücris* or *volücris*.

NOTE 1.—A short syllable is marked  $\cup$ ; a long, — or  $\wedge$ ;  $\wedge$  is also sometimes placed over a contracted syllable; as *deúm* for *deorum*.

NOTE 2.—When a penult syllable is not marked, it comes under one of the above four rules.

## WORDS.

28. What is a primitive word?

A PRIMITIVE WORD is one that is derived from no other word; as, *püer*, a boy; *bönus*, good; *päter*, a father.

29. What is a derivative word?

A DERIVATIVE WORD is one that is derived from another; as, *pueritia*, boyhood (from *puer*); *bonitas*, goodness (from *bönus*); *patërnus*, paternal (from *pater*).

30. What is a simple word?

A SIMPLE WORD is one that is not combined with another; as, *püus*, pious; *äger*, a field; *dies*, a day.

31. What is a compound word?

A COMPOUND WORD is one that is combined with another; as, *impius* (*in* and *püus*), *agricultúra* (*äger* and *cultúra*), *meridies* (*medius* and *dies*).

## SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

32. What is a substantive or noun?

A SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *Cicero*, *Roma*, *homo*, *liber*.

33. What is a proper noun?

A PROPER NOUN is the name of an individual person or place; as, *Cicero*, *Roma*.

34. What is a common noun?

A COMMON NOUN is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *vir*, a man; *dōmus*, a house; *liber*, a book.

35. What is a collective noun, or noun of multitude?

A COLLECTIVE NOUN, or *noun of multitude*, is one which includes many in the singular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army; *classis*, a fleet.

36. What is a patronymic noun?

A PATRONYMIC NOUN is one derived from the name of a father or ancestor; as, *Priamides*, a son or descendant of *Priam*; *Æacides*, a descendant of *Æacus*.

37. What is an abstract noun?

AN ABSTRACT NOUN is the name of a *quality* or *state*; as, *bonitas*, goodness, is the abstract of *bōnus*, good; *ebrietas*, drunkenness, is the abstract of *ebrius*, drunk.

## PERSON AND GENDER.

38. How many persons have nouns, and how are they distinguished?

A noun has *three persons*: first, second, and third. The *first* speaks, the *second* is spoken to, and the *third* is spoken of.

39. How many genders are there?

There are three genders: *masculine*, denoting the male sex; *feminine*, denoting the female; and *neuter*, denoting neither



male nor female. Nouns are sometimes said to be of *common* and *doubtful* genders.

40. When is a noun said to be of common gender?

A noun is of *common gender* when it denotes either a male or a female; as, *conjux*, a husband or wife; *bos*, an ox or a cow.

41. When is a noun said to be of doubtful gender?

A noun is of *doubtful gender* when it is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine; as, *fīnis*, an end, masculine or feminine.

42. What is the distinction between the application of the terms common gender and doubtful gender?

The term *common gender* is applied to animate things which have sex, *doubtful gender* to inanimate things without sex.

43. Is the gender of a noun in Latin determined strictly by its being masculine or feminine, or neither?

The gender of a Latin noun is determined sometimes *naturally* by its signification, but for the most part *grammatically* by its termination.

#### GENDER RULES.

44. Repeat the following general rules for the gender of nouns determined by their signification:

I. What nouns denote a *he* are *masculine*;

But every *she* as *female* we decline.

II. *Months, rivers, winds, and mountains* pass for *hēs*;

*Trees, countries, cities, isles, and herbs* are *shēs*,

With *gems, and ships* that sail the seas.

NOTE.—For exceptions, see Appendix. In the Appendix will also be found general rules for the gender of nouns determined by their ending.



## NUMBER AND CASE.

45. How many numbers have nouns?

Nouns have two numbers: the *singular*, denoting one; and the *plural*, denoting more than one.

46. What is case?

CASE is the relation in which a declinable word stands to some other word or words in a sentence.

47. How is case indicated?

The cases of nouns are indicated by a *change of termination*, called declension.

48. How many cases have Latin nouns?

Latin nouns have *six cases*; viz., *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*.

49. What does the nominative case denote?

The *nominative case* denotes simply *the name* of the person or thing of which something is affirmed.

50. What does the genitive case denote, and what is its sign?

The *genitive case* denotes *origin*, *possession*, or *fitness*. Its English sign is *of*.

51. What does the dative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *dative case* denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is done. Its English sign is *to* or *for*.

52. What does the accusative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *accusative case* denotes the person or thing *acted upon* by something else. It is Englished, except in the case of the personal and relative pronouns, like the nominative.

53. What does the vocative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *vocative case* is used to denote the *person or thing addressed*. Its English sign is *O* or *thou* in the singular, and *O* or *ye* in the plural.

54. What does the ablative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *ablative case* denotes that *from which* something is *taken away*, or *by* or *with which* something is *done*. Its sign is *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, etc.

## DECLENSION.

55. What is declension?

DECLENSION is a *change of termination*, whereby the case and number of a declinable word are indicated.

56. What classes of words are declinable, and what indeclinable?

*Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives*, including *participles*, may be declined. *Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections* are indeclinable.

57. What are indeclinable words sometimes called?

Indeclinable words are sometimes called *particles*.

58. What is the change which verbs undergo called?

The change which verbs undergo is called *conjugation*.

59. How many declensions are there?

There are *five declensions*, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth* declension.

60. How are the declensions distinguished from each other?

The declensions are distinguished from each other by the *termination of the genitive singular*. The first has *æ*, the second *ī*, the third *īs*, the fourth *ūs*, and the fifth *ēi*.

61. What is the root of a noun, and how is it obtained?

The *root* of a noun is the part which remains unchanged in declension. It is obtained from the *genitive singular* by cutting off the termination or final syllable of the word.

## GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

62. Repeat the four general rules of declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

4. Proper names have no plural, except several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

63. How many terminations has the first declension?

The first declension has *four terminations*; viz., *a, e, as, es*. Only those in *a* are Latin; the rest are Greek.

64. What is the gender of nouns of the first declension?

Nouns of the first declension ending in *a* and *e* are *feminine*; those in *as* and *es* are *masculine*.

65. Repeat the gender rule for the first declension.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*,  
And pass for *feminines*; as, *hæc mûsa*.

NOTE.—In the gender rules, when a noun is said to have *hic*, it is masculine; *hæc*, feminine; *hoc*, neuter.

66. What are the case terminations of the first declension?

The *case terminations* of the first declension are seen in the following table of

## TERMINATIONS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ă,	Nom.	æ,
Gen.	æ,	Gen.	ārum,
Dat.	æ,	Dat.	is,
Acc.	am,	Acc.	as,
Voc.	ă,	Voc.	æ,
Abl.	ā.	Abl.	is.

67. What is the difference in *quantity* of the final *a* in the nominative and vocative, and the *a* in the ablative?

The final *ă* in the nominative and vocative is short; in the ablative, *ā* is long, as is shown by the accents.

Decline PENNA, a *feather* or *pen*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. Penn-ă, <i>a pen</i> ;	N. Penn-æ, <i>pens</i> ;
G. Penn-æ, <i>of a pen</i> ;	G. Penn-ārum, <i>of pens</i> ;
D. Penn-æ, <i>to or for a pen</i> ;	D. Penn-is, <i>to or for pens</i> ;
Ac. Penn-am, <i>a pen</i> ;	Ac. Penn-as, <i>pens</i> .
V. Penn-ă, <i>O or thou pen</i> ;	V. Penn-æ, <i>O or ye pens</i> ;
A. Penn-ā, <i>in, with, by a pen</i> .	A. Penn-is, <i>in, with, by pens</i> .

In like manner decline the following nouns, repeating the rule for the gender, and giving the *root* of each (61):

Āl-a, <i>a wing.</i>	Mens-a, <i>a table.</i>
Aquīl-a, <i>an eagle.</i>	Regīn-a, <i>a queen.</i>
Cās-a, <i>a cottage.</i>	Rōs-a, <i>a rose.</i>
Fāb-a, <i>a bean.</i>	Turb-a, <i>a crowd.</i>

68. What nouns in this declension make *ābus* instead of *īs* in the dative and ablative plural, and why?

The following nouns, *asīna*, a she ass; *dea*, a goddess; *ēqua*, a mare; *filia* and *nāta*, a daughter; and *mūla*, a she mule, make *ābus* instead of *īs* in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from masculines in *us* of the second declension.

69. Is this change always made?

Dea and filia always make *ābus*; the others generally make *īs*.

70. How are Greek nouns declined?

Decline nouns in *as*, *es* (if Greek), and in *e*;  
As *Ænēas*, *Anchīses*, and *Penelōpe*.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

N. Ænē-as,	N. Anchīs-es,	N. Penelōp-e,
G. Ænē-æ,	G. Anchīs-æ,	G. Penelōp-es,
D. Ænē-æ,	D. Anchīs-æ,	D. Penelōp-æ,
Ac. Ænē-am or an,	Ac. Anchīs-en,	Ac. Penelōp-en,
V. Ænē-ă,	V. Anchīs-e,	V. Penelōp-e,
Ab. Ænē-ā.	Ab. Anchīs-e.	Ab. Penelōp-e.

#### SECOND DECLENSION.

71. How many terminations has the second declension?

The second declension has *seven terminations*, viz.:

FIVE MASCULINE: *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *os* (*os* Greek).

TWO NEUTER: *um* and *on* (*on* Greek).

72. Are there no feminine nouns in the second declension?

The feminine nouns in the second declension are few in number, and chiefly derived from the Greek. The following

Latin nouns are feminine: *alvus*, the belly; *hūmus*, the ground; *cōlus*, a distaff; and *vannus*, a winnowing-fan.

73. Repeat the gender rule for masculines, second declension.

- (a) The second ends in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us*,  
And should be masculine, like *domīnus*.

Repeat the gender rule for feminine nouns.

- (b) Greek nouns in *us* are mostly feminine found;  
With *alvus*, the belly, and *hūmus*, the ground,  
Together with *cōlus*, a woman's distaff,  
And *vannus*, a fan to winnow out chaff.

Repeat the gender rule for neuter nouns.

- (c) All nouns in *um* with neuters place,  
And substantives that vary in no case;  
Add *vīrus*, juice or poison, and *pelāgus*, the sea;  
But *vulgus* hic et hoc its gender claims to be.

74. When the *tree* ends in *us*, in this declension, what is the termination of the noun denoting its *fruit*, and its gender?

The *tree* ends in *us*, and is *feminine*; the *fruit* ends in *um*, and is *neuter*. Thus:

*Mālus*, an apple-tree;      *mālum*, an apple.  
*Pīrus*, a pear-tree;      *pīrum*, a pear, etc. But  
*Fīcus* means both a fig-tree and a fig.

75. What are the case terminations of the second declension?

The case terminations of the second declension are seen in the following table of

#### TERMINATIONS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

MASCULINE (and FEM.)			NEUTER.		
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	-er, -ir, -ur, -us,	-ī,	N., Ac., V.	-um,	-ā,
G.	-ī,	-ōrum,	G.	-ī,	-ōrum,
D.	-ō,	-īs,	D., Ab.	-ō.	-īs.
Ac.	-um,	-ōs,			
V.	(like <i>nom.</i> ), -e,	-ī,	See General Rules, (62, 1st).		
Ab.	-ō.	-īs.			

Decline DOMINUS, a *lord* or *master*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. domĭn-us, a <i>lord</i> ;	N. domĭn-i, <i>lords</i> ;
G. domĭn-i, of a <i>lord</i> ;	G. domin-ōrum, of <i>lords</i> ;
D. domĭn-o, to or for a <i>lord</i> ;	D. domĭn-is, to or for <i>lords</i> ;
Ac. domĭn-um, a <i>lord</i> ;	Ac. domĭn-os, <i>lords</i> ;
V. domĭn-e, O or thou <i>lord</i> ;	V. domĭn-i, O or ye <i>lords</i> ;
Ab. domĭn-o, in, with, by a <i>lord</i> .	Ab. domĭn-is, in, with, by <i>lords</i> .

76. What is to be noticed as to the vocative of nouns in *us*?

The nominative in *us*, in the second declension, makes the vocative in *e*.

77. How do nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur* make the genitive?

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur* make the genitive by *adding i* to the nominative; as, *puer*, *pueri*, a boy; *vir*, *viri*, a man. But nouns in *er* sometimes *drop e* in the genitive; as, *liber*, *libri*, a book; *āger*, *agri*, a field; *āper*, *apri*, a boar.

Decline PUER, a *boy*, and AGER, a *field*, giving the rule for *gender*, and the *root* of each (44, 73 a, 61):

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. puer,	puēr-i,	N. ager,	agr-i,
G. puēr-i,	puer-ōrum,	G. agr-i,	agr-ōrum,
D. puēr-o,	puēr-is,	D. agr-o,	agr-is,
Ac. puēr-um,	puēr-os,	Ac. agr-um,	agr-os,
V. puer,	puēr-i,	V. ager,	agr-i,
Ab. puēr-o.	puēr-is.	Ab. agr-o.	agr-is.

Decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the *gender* and the *root* of each:

Hort-us, a <i>garden</i> .	Gēner, a <i>son-in-law</i> .	Līber, a <i>book</i> .
Fluvi-us, a <i>river</i> .	Sōcer, a <i>father-in-law</i> .	Āper, a <i>boar</i> .
Vent-us, the <i>wind</i> .	Lucifer, the <i>morning star</i> .	Cancer, a <i>crab</i> .

78. What are the only nouns in *ir* of this declension?

*Vir*, a man, and its compounds (as *Decēmvir*) are the only nouns in *ir* of the second declension.



79. Is there any noun in *ur* in this declension?

The only word in *ur* of the second declension is the masculine gender of the adjective *satur*, full.

Decline the neuter noun REGNUM, a *kingdom*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. regn-um, a <i>kingdom</i> ;	regn-a, <i>kingdoms</i> ;
G. regn-i, of a <i>kingdom</i> ;	regn-ōrum, of <i>kingdoms</i> ;
D. regn-o, to or for a <i>kingdom</i> ;	regn-is, to or for <i>kingdoms</i> ;
Ac. regn-um, a <i>kingdom</i> ;	regn-a, <i>kingdoms</i> ;
V. regn-um, O or thou <i>kingdom</i> ;	regn-a, O or ye <i>kingdoms</i> ;
Ab. regn-o, in, with, by a <i>kingdom</i> .	regn-is, in, with, by <i>kingdoms</i> .

Decline the following neuter nouns, giving the general rule for declension (62, 1st), the rule for the gender (73 c), and the *root* of each:

Bell-um, <i>war</i> .	Ōv-um, <i>an egg</i> .	Præli-um, <i>a battle</i> .
Foli-um, <i>a leaf</i> .	Coll-um, <i>a neck</i> .	Tect-um, <i>a roof</i> .

#### VOCATIVE OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

80. How do proper names in *ius* form their vocative?

Proper names in *ius* drop *us* in the *vocative*; as, *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *Horatius*, *Horāti*; except *Pius*, which makes *Pie*.

81. What common nouns make the vocative in *i*? \*

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make the vocative *fīli* and *gēni*.

82. What is the vocative of *deus* and *meus*?

*Deus* makes *deus*, and *meus*, *mī* or *meus*, in the vocative.

83. What does *deus* make in the plural?

*Deus*, in the plural, more frequently makes *dīi* and *dīis* than *dei* and *deis*. *Dīi* and *dīis* are sometimes contracted into *dī* and *dīs*.

84. Is any other case in the second declension subject to contraction?

The genitive plural *ōrum* is sometimes contracted into *ūm*; as, *deūm*, *liberūm*, *Danaūm*, for *deōrum*, *liberōrum*, *Danaōrum*.

Decline DEUS, a *god*, making the contractions.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. and V.	de-us,	N. and V.	de-i, dii, <i>or</i> dī,
G.	de-i,	G.	de-ōrum, <i>or</i> deūm,
D. and Ab.	de-o,	D. and Ab.	de-is, di-is, <i>or</i> dīs,
Ac.	de-um.	Ac.	de-os.

85. How are Greek nouns of this declension declined?

Greek nouns in *os* and *on* of the second declension are declined as follows:

ANDROGEOS, <i>Masc.</i>		DELOS, <i>Fem.</i>	BARBITON, a lyre, <i>Neut.</i>	
			SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	Androge-os,	Dēl-os,	N., Ac., V.	barbīt-on, barbīt-a,
G.	Androge-o, <i>or</i> i,	Dēl-i,	G.	barbīt-i, barbīt-ōn,
D.	Androge-o,	Dēl-o,	D. and Ab.	barbīt-o, barbīt-is.
Ac.	Androge-o, <i>or</i> on,	Dēl-on,		
V.	Androge-os,	Dēl-e,		
Ab.	Androge-o.	Dēl-o.		

### THIRD DECLENSION.

86. Are there many nouns of the third declension?

Nouns of the third declension are more numerous than those of all the other declensions put together. They are of all genders, and generally have more syllables in the oblique cases than in the nominative.

87. What are the terminations of the third declension?

The terminations of the third declension are too many to be enumerated. The *final letters* are thirteen; viz., *a, e, o, u, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x.*

88. Repeat the general rule for masculine nouns of the third declension.

The third has males in *er, or, os, n, o*;  
Long words are feminine in *do* and *go*.

89. Repeat the general rule for feminine nouns.

Third nouns in *io* mostly *hæc* procure,  
With *as, aus, es, is, x,* and *s* impure.



90. What does the word "*impure*" mean in grammar?

*Impure* in grammar means *after a consonant*. Thus, *s impure* means *s* after a consonant; as, *s* in *urbs*, *gens*.

91. What is the general rule for neuters in the third declension?

Nouns ending in *c*, *a*, *l*, *e*, *t* (calet), *ar*, *men*, *ur*, and *us*, May with the neuter kind be placed by us.

92. What are the case terminations of the third declension?

The case terminations of the third declension may be seen in the following table of

## TERMINATIONS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.		NEUTER.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. ( <i>various</i> ),	-es,	N., Ac., V. ( <i>various</i> ),	-a, or -ia,
G. -is,	-um (ium),	G. -is,	-um, -ium,
D. -i,	-ibus,	D. -i,	} -ibus.
Ac. -em,	-es,	Ab. -e, or -i.	
V. ( <i>like nom.</i> ),	-es,		
Ab. -e, or i.	-ibus.		

93. What would it be well to note in this declension?

The third declension has only three terminations in the plural; viz., *one* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative; *one* for the genitive; and *one* for the dative and ablative.

94. How may the formation of the genitive singular be learned?

The formation of the genitive singular is best learned by *practice*.

Decline SERMO, *a speech*, Masc.; also, COLOR, *a color*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. sermo,	sermōn-es,	N. color,	colōr-es,
G. sermōn-is,	sermōn-um,	G. colōr-is,	colōr-um,
D. sermōn-i,	sermon-ibus,	D. colōr-i,	color-ibus,
Ac. sermōn-em,	sermōn-es,	Ac. colōr-em,	colōr-es,
V. sermo,	sermōn-es,	V. color,	colōr-es,
Ab. sermōn-e.	sermon-ibus.	Ab. colōr-e.	color-ibus.

After the same manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender and the root of each:

Carbo, *a coal.*

Hönor, *honor.*

Leo, *a lion.*

Lăbor, *labor.*

95. What is the first class of nouns that make *ium* in the genitive plural?

Nouns in *is* and *es* which do *not increase*\* in the genitive singular make *ium* in the genitive plural.

Decline RUPES, *a rock*, and TURRIS, *a tower*, Fem.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. rūp-es,	rūp-es,	N. turr-is,	turr-es,
G. rūp-is,	rūp-ium,	G. turr-is,	turr-ium,
D. rūp-i,	rup-ibus,	D. turr-i,	turr-ibus,
Ac. rūp-em,	rūp-es,	Ac. turr-em,	turr-es,
V. rūp-es,	rūp-es,	V. turr-is,	turr-es,
Ab. rūp-e.	rup-ibus.	Ab. turr-e.	turr-ibus.

After the same manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each:

Nūbes, *a cloud.*

Āvis, *a bird.*

Vulpes, *a fox.*

Classis, *a fleet.*

96. What is the second class of nouns that make *ium* in the genitive plural?

Nouns of one syllable in *as* and *is*, and those in *s* and *x* after *a consonant*, make *ium* in the genitive plural.

Decline VAS, *a surety*; LIS, *a lawsuit*; PARS, *a part*; and NOX, *night*; giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each:

SINGULAR (MASC.)	PLURAL.	SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N. vās,	vād-es,	N. līs,	līt-es,
G. vād-is,	vād-ium,	G. līt-is,	līt-ium,
D. vād-i,	vād-ibus,	D. līt-i,	līt-ibus,
Ac. vād-em,	vād-es,	Ac. līt-em,	līt-es,
V. vās,	vād-es,	V. līs,	līt-es,
Ab. vād-e.	vād-ibus.	Ab. līt-e.	līt-ibus.

\* By the word "*increase*," usually employed in Prosody, is meant "to take an added number of syllables." (See Prosody, 18.)

SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.	SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N. pars,	part-es,	N. nox,	noct-es,
G. part-is,	part-ium	G. noct-is,	noct-ium,
D. part-i,	part-ibus,	D. noct-i,	noct-ibus,
Ac. part-em,	part-es,	Ac. noct-em,	noct-es,
V. pars,	part-es,	V. nox,	noct-es,
Ab. part-e.	part-ibus,	Ab. noct-e.	noct-ibus.

After the same manner, decline *URBS*, *a city*, and *ARX*, *a citadel*, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each.

97. What do nouns in *as* and *ns* of more than one syllable make in the genitive plural?

Nouns in *as* and *ns* of more than one syllable make sometimes *um*, sometimes *ium*, and sometimes both in the genitive plural.

Decline *CIVITAS*, *a state*, and *PARENS*, *a parent*.

SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL*	SINGULAR (MASC. AND FEM.)	PLURAL.
N. civitas,	civitāt-es,	N. parens,	parent-es,
G. civitāt-is,	civitātum,	G. parent-is,	parent { -um, -ium,
D. civitāt-i,	civitat-ibus,	D. parent-i,	parent-ibus,
Ac. civitāt-em,	civitāt-es,	Ac. parent-em,	parent-es,
V. civitas,	civitāt-es,	V. parens,	parent-es,
Ab. civitāt-e.	civitat-ibus.	Ab. parent-e.	parent-ibus.

Repeat the general rule for the declension of neuter nouns (61, 1st), and decline the following, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each: *opus*, *a work*; *caput*, *a head*; *carmen*, *a song*; *iter*, *a journey*.

*OPUS*, *a work*, Neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V. ōpus,	N., Ac., V. opēr-a,
G. opēr-is,	G. opēr-um,
D. opēr-i,	D. and Ab. oper-ibus.
Ab. opēr-e.	

*CAPUT*, *a head*, Neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V. caput,	N., Ac., V. capīt-a,
G. capīt-is	G. capīt-um,
D. capīt-i,	D. and Ab. capit-ibus.
Ab. capīt-e.	

CARMEN, *a song*, Neut.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N., Ac., V.	carmen,	N., Ac., V.	carmîn-a,
G.	carmîn-is,	G.	carmîn-um,
D.	carmîn-i,	D. and Ab.	carmin-îbus.
Ab.	carmîn-e.		

ITER, *a journey*, Neut.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N., Ac., V.	îter,	N., Ac., V.	itinêr-a,
G.	itinêr-is,	G.	itinêr-um,
D.	itinêr-i,	D. and Ab.	itiner-îbus.
Ab.	itinêr-e.		

After the same manner decline

Corp-us, -ôris, <i>a body</i> .	Fêm-ur, -ôris, <i>a thigh</i> .
Lăt-us, -êris, <i>a side</i> .	Flum-en, -înis, <i>a river</i> .

98. What is the peculiarity of neuter nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*?

Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar* make the ablative singular in *i*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium*.

Decline SEDILE, *a seat*; ANIMAL, *an animal*; and CALCAR, *a spur*.

SEDILE, *a seat*, Neut.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N., Ac., V.	sedîle,	N., Ac., V.	sedîl-ia,
G.	sedîl-is,	G.	sedîl-ium,
D. and Ab.	sedîl-i.	D. and Ab.	sedil-îbus.

ANIMAL, *an animal*, Neut.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N., Ac., V.	anîmal,	N., Ac., V.	animâl-ia,
G.	animâl-is,	G.	animâl-ium,
D. and Ab.	animâl-i.	D. and Ab.	animal-îbus.

CALCAR, *a spur*, Neut.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N., Ac., V.	calcar,	N., Ac., V.	calcâr-ia,
G.	calcâr-is,	G.	calcâr-ium,
D. and Ab.	calcâr-i.	D. and Ab.	calcar-îbus.

99. What are the exceptions to this rule?

The names of towns, as *Præneste*, and the following neuters in *ar* have *e* in the ablative; viz., *bacchar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hēpar*, the liver; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; also, *sal*, salt. *Māre*, the sea, has either *e* or *i*—usually *i*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

## ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

100. Repeat the list of nouns in *is* which have *im* in the accusative singular.

The following nouns in *is* have *im* in the accusative singular:

Amussis, <i>f.</i> , a measure or rule.	Rāvis, <i>f.</i> , hoarseness.
Būris, <i>f.</i> , the beam of a plow.	Sināpis, <i>f.</i> , mustard.
Cannābis, <i>f.</i> , hemp.	Sītis, <i>f.</i> , thirst.
Cucūmis, <i>m.</i> , a cucumber.	Tussis, <i>f.</i> , a cough.
Gummis, <i>f.</i> , gum.	Vis, <i>f.</i> , strength.
Mephītis, <i>f.</i> , a strong smell.	

101. Repeat the list of those which have *em* or *im*.

The following nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the accusative singular:

Aquālis, <i>c.</i> , a water-pot.	Puppis, <i>f.</i> , the stern of a ship.
Clāvis, <i>f.</i> , a key.	Restis, <i>f.</i> , a rope.
Cūtis, <i>f.</i> , a skin.	Secūris, <i>f.</i> , an axe.
Febris, <i>f.</i> , a fever.	Sementis, <i>f.</i> , a sowing.
Lentis, or Lens, <i>f.</i> , a lentil.	Strigilis, <i>f.</i> , a curry-comb.
Nāvis, <i>f.</i> , a ship.	Turris, <i>f.</i> , a tower.
Pelvis, <i>f.</i> , a basin.	

102. In what do the two foregoing classes of nouns make their ablative?

Nouns which have *im* in the accusative have *i* in the ablative; those which have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

103. Decline the following irregular nouns:

JUPITER.		VIS, <i>strength, power</i> , F.		BOS, <i>an ox or cow</i> , M. and F.	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. Jupiter,	vis,	vires,		bos,	böves,
G. Jövis,	vis,	virium,		bövis,	boum,
D. Jövi,	—	viribus,		bövi,	böbus, or būbus,
Ac. Jövem,	vim,	vires,		bövem,	böves,
V. Jupiter,	vis,	vires,		bos,	böves,
Ab. Jöve.	vi.	viribus.		böve.	böbus, or būbus.

## GREEK NOUNS—THIRD DECLENSION.

104. Decline the following Greek nouns:

LAMPAS, <i>a lamp</i> .		TROAS, <i>a Trojan</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. lamp-as,	-ādes,	N. Tro-as,	-ādes,
G. lamp { -ādis, } { -ādos, }	-ādum,	G. Tro { -ādīs, } { -ādos, }	-ādum,
D. lamp-ādi,	-adibus,	D. Tro-ādi,	{ -adibus, -āsi, -āsin,
Ac. lamp { -ādem, { -āda,	-ādes, -ādas,	Ac. Tro { -ādem, { -āda,	-ādes, -ādas,
V. lamp-as,	-ādes,	V. Tro-as,	-ādes,
Ab. lamp-āde,	-adibus.	Ab. Tro-āde,	{ -adibus, -āsi, -āsin.

HEROS, <i>a hero</i> .		POEMA, <i>a poem</i> , Neut.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. hēros,	herōis,	N. poēma,	poemāta,
G. herōis,	herōum,	G. poemātis,	poemātum,
D. herōi,	heroibus,	D. poemāti,	poematibus, or -ātis,
Ac. { herōem, { herōa,	herōes, herōas,	Ac. poēma,	poemāta,
V. { herōem, { herōa,	herōes, herōas,	V. poēma,	poemāta,
Ab. herōe.	heroibus.	Ab. poemāti.	poematibus, or -ātis.

105. What is the form of the name *Dido*?

Dido is declined both as a Latin and Greek form; thus,

N.	Dido,	or	Dido,
G.	Didōnis,	or	Didūs,
D.	Didōni,	or	Dido,
Ac.	Didōnem,	or	Dido,
V.	Dido,	or	Dido,
Ab.	Didōne,	or	Dido.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

106. How many terminations has the fourth declension?

The fourth declension has only *two terminations*; viz., *us*, generally masculine, sometimes feminine; and *u*, neuter.

107. Repeat the general rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension?

The fourth in *us* are chiefly masculine;

But nouns in *u* as neuters we decline.

*Porticus, tribus, mānus* are feminine,

With *cōlus, fīcus, dōmus*; but these three

Both of the second and the fourth may be:

*Cupressus, cornus, pīnus*, such you'll see.

108. What are the case terminations of the fourth declension?

The case terminations of the fourth declension may be seen in the following table of

## TERMINATIONS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.		NEUTER.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. -ūs,	-ūs,	N. -ū,	-ua,
G. -ūs,	-ūum,	G. -ūs,	-uum,
D. -ui,	-ībus,	D. -ū,	-ībus,
Ac. -um,	-ūs,	Ac. -ū,	-ua,
V. -ūs,	-ūs,	V. -ū,	-ua,
Ab. -ū.	-ībus.	Ab. -ū.	-ībus.



109. What form does the dative, singular and plural, sometimes take in this declension?

The dative singular sometimes takes the form *u* instead of *ui*, and the plural *ibus* instead of *ibus*.

110. Repeat the list of nouns that make *ibus* in the dative plural.

*Acus, arcus, portus, quercus,*

*Ficus, lăcus, artus,*

*Tribus, partus, et spēcu,*

*Pēcus adde vėru.*

111. What nouns make *ibus* or *ibus*?

*Gėnu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vėru*, a spit, make *ibus* or *ibus*.

Decline FRUCTUS, *fruit*, and CORNU, *a horn*.

FRUCTUS, <i>fruit</i> , Mas.		CORNU, <i>a horn</i> , Neut.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. fruct-ūs,	fruct-ūs,	N. corn-u,	corn-ua,
G. fruct-ūs,	fruct-uum,	G. corn-ūs,	corn-uum,
D. fruct-ui,	fruct-ibus,	D. corn-u,	corn-ibus,
Ac. fruct-um,	fruct-ūs,	Ac. corn-u,	corn-ua,
V. fruct-ūs,	fruct-ūs,	V. corn-u,	corn-ua,
Ab. fruct-u.	fruct-ibus.	Ab. corn-u.	corn-ibus.

112. What is the difference in the quantity of *us* final in the nominative and genitive of the fourth declension?

*Us* final in the nominative is short, in the genitive long. Plural cases in *us* are also long.

In like manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender, and the root of each:

*Cantus*, a song.

*Mănus*, a hand.

*Currus*, a chariot.

*Vėru*, a spit.

*Portus*, a harbor.

*Gėnu*, a knee.

113. What is the peculiarity of *dōmus*?

*Dōmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second.



Decline *dŏmus*, giving the rule for the gender, and mentioning the root.

DOMUS, *a house*, Fem.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	dŏm-us,	N.	dŏm-us,
G.	dŏm-ūs, <i>or</i> -i,	G.	dom-uum, <i>or</i> -ŏrum,
D.	dŏm-ui, <i>or</i> -o,	D.	dom-ībus,
Ac.	dŏm-um,	Ac.	dŏm-us, <i>or</i> -os,
V.	dŏm-us,	V.	dŏm-us,
A.	dŏm-o.	A.	dom-ibus.

114. What is the difference in signification of *domūs* and *domi* in the genitive singular:

In the genitive singular, *domūs* signifies of a house, and *domi* signifies at home, or of home.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

115. How many terminations has the fifth declension?

The fifth declension has only one termination, viz., *es*; as, *res*, a thing; *dies*, a day.

116. What is the gender of nouns of the fifth declension?

All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, which is masculine, and has no plural.

117. Repeat the rule for the gender of nouns of the fifth declension.

The fifth are feminine, and end in *es*;

But one is masculine—*meridies*.

118. Are there many nouns of this declension?

There are only fifty-seven nouns of the fifth declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many want the plural altogether.

119. What are the case terminations of the fifth declension?

The case terminations of the fifth declension may be seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	-es,	Nom.	-es,
Gen.	-ēī,	Gen.	-ērum,
Dat.	-ēī,	Dat.	-ēbus,
Acc.	-em,	Acc.	-es,
Voc.	-es,	Voc.	-es,
Abl.	-ē.	Abl.	-ēbus.

Decline RES, *a thing*, and DIES, *a day*.

RES, <i>a thing</i> , Fem.				DIES, <i>a day</i> , Doubt.			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	res,	res,		N.	di-es,	di-es,	
G.	rēī,	rērum,		G.	di-ēī,	di-ērum,	
D.	rēī,	rēbus,		D.	di-ēī,	di-ēbus,	
Ac.	rem,	res,		Ac.	di-em,	di-es,	
V.	res,	res,		V.	di-es,	di-es,	
Ab.	re,	rēbus.		Ab.	di-e.	di-ēbus.	

COMPOUND NOUNS.

120. What is a compound noun?

A compound noun is one compounded either of *two nouns* or of *a noun and an adjective*.

121. Of what is *respublica* compounded, and how is it declined?

*Respublica*, a commonwealth, is compounded of *res*, a thing, and *publica*, public or common, and is thus declined:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	res-publica.	N.	res-publicæ,
G.	rēī-publicæ,	G.	rerum-publicārum,
D.	rēī-publicæ,	D.	rebus-publicis,
Ac.	rem-publicam,	Ac.	res-publicas,
V.	res-publica,	V.	res-publicæ,
Ab.	re-publicâ.	Ab.	rebus-publicis.

122. Of what is *materfamilias* compounded, and how is it declined?

*Materfamilias*, a mistress of a family, is compounded of *māter*, a mother, and *familias*, of a family, an old genitive. *Mater* only is declined; *familias* remains unchanged: thus,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	mater-familias,	N.	matres-familias,
G.	matris-familias,	G.	matrum-familias,
D.	matri-familias,	D.	matribus-familias,
Ac.	matrem-familias,	Ac.	matres-familias,
V.	mater-familias,	V.	matres-familias,
Ab.	matre-familias.	Ab.	matribus-familias.

Decline JUSJURANDUM, *an oath*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	jus-jurandum,	N.	jūra-juranda,
G.	jūris-jurandi,		_____
D.	jūri-jurando,		_____
Ac.	jus-jurandum,	Ac.	jūra-juranda,
V.	jus-jurandum,	V.	jūra-juranda.
Ab.	jūre-jurando.		_____

#### VARIABLE NOUNS.

123. What is a variable noun?

A variable noun is one which *varies* in *gender* or *declension*, or in both. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

124. Mention two of the most common *heteroclites*.

*Jugĕrum*, an acre, in the singular makes, Gen. *jugĕri* or *-is*; Abl. *jugĕre*; and in the plural, Nom. and Acc. *jugĕra*; Gen. *jugĕrum*; Abl. *jugĕribus*. *Vas*, *vassis*, a vessel, makes the plural *vasa*, *vasōrum*.

125. The following lines contain the most common *heterogeneous* nouns. Repeat them:

*Frĕnum* and *lĕcus*, with *rastrum* and *jĕcus*,  
Have *frĕni* and *lĕci*, with *rastri* and *jĕci*,  
And *frĕna* and *lĕca*, with *rastra* and *jĕca*.

## ADJECTIVES.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

126. What is an adjective?

An adjective is a word used to qualify or describe a noun; as, *vir bōnus*, a *good* man; *pulchra puella*, a *beautiful* girl.

127. Of what declensions are adjectives?

Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

128. How do adjectives of the first and second declensions terminate?

Adjectives of the first and second declensions terminate in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, or in *-er*, *-a*, *-um*; as, *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*; *tēner*, *tenēra*, *tenērum*.

Decline *BONUS*, *good*, and *TENER*, *tender*.

*BONUS*, *BONA*, *BONUM*, *good*.

SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	bōn-us,	bōn-a,	bōn-um.
Gen.	bōn-i,	bōn-æ,	bōn-i.
Dat.	bōn-o,	bōn-æ,	bōn-o.
Acc.	bōn-um,	bōn-am,	bōn-um.
Voc.	bōn-e,	bōn-a,	bōn-um.
Abl.	bōn-a,	bōn-â,	bōn-um.
PLURAL.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	bōn-i,	bōn-æ,	bōn-a.
Gen.	bon-ōrum,	bon-ārum,	bon-ōrum.
Dat.	bōn-is,	bōn-is,	bōn-is.
Acc.	bōn-os,	bōn-as,	bōn-a.
Voc.	bōn-i,	bōn-æ,	bōn-a.
Abl.	bōn-is,	bōn-is,	bōn-is.

TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, *tender*.

SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	těner,	teněr-a,	teněr-um.
Gen.	teněr-i,	teněr-æ,	teněr-i.
Dat.	teněr-o,	teněr-æ,	teněr-o.
Acc.	teněr-um,	teněr-am,	teněr-um.
Voc.	těner,	teněr-a,	teněr-um.
Abl.	teněr-o,	teněr-â,	teněr-o.

PLURAL.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	teněr-i,	teněr-æ,	teněr-a.
Gen.	tener-ōrum,	tener-ārum,	tener-ōrum.
Dat.	teněr-is,	teněr-is,	teněr-is.
Acc.	teněr-os,	teněr-as,	teněr-a.
Voc.	teněr-i,	teněr-æ,	teněr-a.
Abl.	teněr-is,	teněr-is,	teněr-is.

129. Are all adjectives in *er* declined like *těner*?

Most adjectives in *er* drop *e* in the declension; as,

ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, *black*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	āter,	atr-a,	atr-um.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a.
G.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-i.	atr-ōrum,	atr-ārum,	atr-ōrum.
D.	atr-o,	atr-æ,	atr-o.	atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-is.
Ac.	atr-um,	atr-am,	atr-um.	atr-os,	atr-as,	atr-a.
V.	āter,	atr-a,	atr-um.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a.
Ab.	atr-o,	atr-â,	atr-o.	atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-is.

Like *bōnus*, decline *altus*, high; *cārus*, dear; *dūrus*, hard.

Like *těner*, decline *asper*, rough; *liber*, free; *miser*, miserable.

Like *āter*, decline *piger*, lazy; *pulcher*, fair; *mācer*, lean.

130. Mention the adjectives which vary in the genitive and dative singular from the above forms.

Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* make the genitive singular in *ius* and the dative in *i*; namely:

Alius, <i>another</i> (of many).	Tōtus, <i>the whole</i> .
Alter, <i>the other</i> (of two).	Ullus, <i>any</i> .
Neuter, <i>neither</i> .	Unus, <i>one</i> .
Nullus, <i>no one, none</i> .	Uter, <i>which of the two</i> , and its
Sōlus, <i>alone</i> .	compounds (see Pros., ex. 2).

Decline TOTUS, of this form, and note that the penult of the genitive is long.

TOTUS, TOTA, TOTUM, *whole*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. tōt-us,	tōt-a,	tōt-um.	tōt-i,	tōt-æ,	tōt-a.
G. tot-īus,	tot-īus,	tot-īus.	tot-ōrum,	tot-ārum,	tot-ōrum.
D. tōt-i,	tōt-i,	tōt-i.	tōt-is,	tōt-is,	tōt-is.
Ac. tōt-um,	tōt-um,	tōt-um.	tōt-os,	tōt-as,	tōt-a.
V. tōt-e,	tōt-a,	tōt-um.	tōt-i,	tōt-æ,	tōt-a.
Ab. tōt-o,	tōt-â,	tōt-o.	tōt-is,	tōt-is,	tōt-is.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

131. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided?

Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes:

*First*—Those which have only *one termination* for all the genders; as, *fēlix*, happy; *prūdēns*, prudent.

*Second*—Those which have *two terminations*, one for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter; as, *mītis*, *mīte*, mild; *brēvis*, *brēvis*, *brēve*, short.

*Third*—Those which have *four terminations*, two for the masculine, one for the feminine, and one for the neuter; as, *ācer* or *acris*, *acris*, *acre*; *celēber* or *celēbris*, *celēbris*, *celēbre*.

132. What does the second class include?

The second class includes all comparatives in *ior*, *ior*, *ius*; as, *mitiōr*, *mitior*, *mitius*, more mild or milder.

133. What does the third class include?

The third class includes adjectives which have *two terminations* for the masculine, *one* for the feminine, and *one* for the neuter; as, *acer* or *ācris*, *acris*, *acre*, sharp; *celēber* or *celēbris*, *celēbris*, *celēbre*, celebrated.

Decline FELIX and PRUDENS, of the first class.

FELIX, *happy* (one termination).

SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix.
Gen.	felic-is,	felic-is,	fēlic-is.
Dat.	felic-i,	fēlic-i,	fēlic-i.
Acc.	felic-em,	felic-em,	fēlic-em.
Voc.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix.
Abl.	felic-e, <i>or</i> -i,	fēlic-e, <i>or</i> -i,	fēlic-e, <i>or</i> -i.

PLURAL.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	fēlic-es,	felic-es,	fēlic-ia.
Gen.	felic-ium,	felic-ium,	fēlic-ium.
Dat.	felic-ibus,	felic-ibus,	felic-ibus.
Acc.	fēlic-es,	felic-es,	fēlic-ia.
Voc.	fēlic-es,	felic-es,	fēlic-ia.
Abl.	felic-ibus,	felic-ibus,	felic-ibus.

PRUDENS, *prudent* (one termination).

SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns.
Gen.	prudent-is,	prudent-is,	prudent-is.
Dat.	prudent-i,	prudent-i,	prudent-i.
Acc.	prudent-em,	prudent-em,	prudent-em.
Voc.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns.
Abl.	prudent-e, <i>or</i> -i,	prudent-e, <i>or</i> -i,	prudent-e, <i>or</i> -i.

PLURAL.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Gen.	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium.
Dat.	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus.
Acc.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Voc.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Abl.	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus.



In like manner, decline *fērox*, fierce; *vēlox*, swift; *ingens*, great; *rēcens*, fresh.

Decline *MITIS*, *mild*, and *MITIOR*, *milder*, of the second class.

*MITIS*, *mild* (two terminations).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. mīt-is,	-is,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
G. mīt-is,	-is,	-is.	mit-ŷum,	-ŷum,	-ŷum.
D. mīt-i,	-i,	-i.	mit-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.
Ac. mīt-em,	-em,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
V. mīt-is,	-is,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
Ab. mīt-i,	-i,	-i.	mit-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.

*Comparative*, *MITIOR*, *milder* (two terminations).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. mitior,	mitior,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
G. mitiōr-is,	-is,	-is.	mitiōr-um,	-um,	-um.
D. mitiōr-i,	-i,	-i.	mitior-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.
Ac. mitiōr-em,	-em,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
V. mitior,	mitior,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
Ab. mitiōr-e, or -i,	-e, or -i,	-e, or -i.	mitior-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.

In like manner decline *brēvis*, short; *debilis*, weak; *durior*, harder; *melior*, better.

134. How is the comparative *plus*, more, declined?

The comparative *plus*, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	plus,	plūr-es,	-es,	-a (-ia).
G.	plūr-is,	plur-ium,	-ium,	-ium.
D.	—	plur-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.
Ac.	plus,	plūr-es,	-es,	-a (-ia).
V.	—	—	—	—
Ab.	plūr-e.	plur-ŷibus,	-ŷibus,	-ŷibus.



Decline ACER, *sharp*, of the third class.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. {	ācer, <i>or</i>					
	acr-is, }	-is,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
G.	acr-is,	-is,	-is.	acr-ium,	-ium,	-ium.
D.	acr-i,	-i,	-i.	acr-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus.
Ac.	acr-em,	-em,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
V. {	ācer, <i>or</i>					
	acr-is, }	-is,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
A.	acr-i,	-i,	-i.	acr-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus.

In like manner decline *celeber* or *celebris*, famous; *volūcer*, or *volūcris*, swift.

135. How do you know when an adjective ends in *e* or *i*, or *i* only, in the ablative?

Adjectives of one termination have *e* or *i* in the ablative. When the neuter ends in *e*, the ablative has *i* only. Participles have *e* oftener than *i*, and when used in the ablative absolute, only *e*.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

136. What is a numeral adjective?

A NUMERAL ADJECTIVE is one that expresses *number*.

137. Into how many principal classes may numeral adjectives be divided?

Numeral adjectives may be divided into four principal classes; namely,

*First*—CARDINAL, which express number simply, or how many; as, *ūnus*, *duo*, *tres*, etc., one, two, three, etc.

*Second*—ORDINAL, denoting which one of a number; as, *prīmus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, etc., first, second, third, etc.

*Third*—DISTRIBUTIVES, which denote *how many of each*; as, *bīni*, two by two, or a pair; *terni*, three by three, or by threes, etc. These are used only in the plural.

*Fourth*—MULTIPLICATIVES, which denote *how many fold*; as, *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, triple, etc.

138. Repeat the *cardinals*, the *ordinals*, and the *distributives*, up to twenty.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.
	<i>One, Two, etc.</i>	<i>First, Second, etc.</i>	<i>One by One, etc.</i>
1.	Unus,	Prīmus,	Singūli,
2.	Duo,	Secundus,	Bīni,
3.	Tres,	Tertius,	Terni, <i>or</i> trīni,
4.	Quatuor,	Quartus,	Quaterni,
5.	Quinque,	Quintus,	Quīni,
6.	Sex,	Sextus,	Sēni,
7.	Septem,	Septīmus,	Septēni,
8.	Octo,	Octāvus	Octōni,
9.	Nōvem,	Nōnus,	Novēni,
10.	Dēcem,	Decīmus,	Dēni,
11.	Undēcim,	Undecīmus,	Undēni,
12.	Duodēcim,	Duodecīmus,	Duodēni,
13.	Tredēcim,	Tertius decīmus,	Terni dēni,
14.	Quatuordēcim,	Quartus decīmus,	Quarterni dēni,
15.	Quindēcim,	Quintus decīmus,	Quīni dēni,
16.	{ Sedēcim, <i>or</i> } { Sexdēcim, }	Sextus decīmus,	Sēni dēni,
17.	Septemdēcim,	Septīmus dicīmus,	Septēni dēni,
18.	Octodēcim,	Octāvus decīmus,	Octōni dēni,
19.	Novemdēcim,	Nōnus decīmus,	Novēni dēni,
20.	Viginti.	{ Vicesīmus, <i>or</i> } { Vigēsīmus. }	Vicēni.

139. Repeat the numbers for *thirty*, *forty*, etc., up to a *hundred*.

30.	Triginta,	{ Tricesīmus, <i>or</i> } { Trigesīmus, }	Tricēni,
40.	Quadraginta,	Quadragesīmus,	Quadragēni,
50.	Quinquaginta,	Quinquagesīmus,	Quinquagēni,
60.	Sexaginta,	Sexagesīmus,	Sexagēni,
70.	Septuaginta,	Septuagesīmus,	Septuagēni,
80.	Octoginta,	Octogesīmus,	Octogēni,
90.	Nonaginta,	Nonagesīmus,	Nonagēni,
100.	Centum.	Centesīmus.	Cetēni.

140. After the tens (beginning with twenty) how are the additional units expressed?

*Twenty-one, twenty-two, etc.*, are expressed just as in English; thus, twenty-one, *viginti ūnus*; or one *and* twenty, *ūnus et viginti*, etc. After the hundreds, the conjunction is either used or omitted; as, *centum ūnus*, or *centum et ūnus*, a hundred *and* one.

141. What other way has the Latin of expressing eighteen, nineteen, twenty-eight, twenty-nine, etc., through the tens?

Eighteen, nineteen, etc., are sometimes expressed by *subtracting* the units from the tens; as, *duo-de-viginti*, eighteen; *un-de-quingaginta*, forty-nine, etc. Ordinals and distributives are formed in the same manner; as, *undevicesimus*, the nineteenth; *duodevicesimi*, etc.

142. What is the idiomatic use of *prior* and *alter*?

When only two are spoken of, *prior* is used for *prīmus* and *alter* for *secundus*.

143. Repeat the numbers for two hundred, three hundred, etc., up to a thousand.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.
200.	Ducenti,	Ducentesimus,	Ducēni,
300.	Trecenti,	Trecentesimus,	Trecēni, or Trecentēni,
400.	Quadringenti,	Quadringentesimus,	{ Quadringēni, or Quadringentēni,
500.	Quingenti,	Quingentesimus,	Quingēni,
600.	Sexcenti,	Sexcentesimus,	Sexcēni, or Sexcentēni,
700.	Septingenti,	Septingentesimus,	Septingēni,
800.	Octingenti,	Octingentesimus,	Octingēni,
900.	Nongenti,	Nongentesimus,	Nonagēni,
1000.	Mille.	Millesimus.	Millēni, or { Singŭla Millia.

144. With regard to cardinal numbers what will it be useful to remember?

It will be useful to remember that cardinal *tens* end in *ginta*, and *hundreds* in *centi* or *genti*.

145. Decline UNUS, one.

	SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	
N.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum.	} <i>The rest like bōnus.</i>
G.	unīus,	unīus,	unīus.	
D.	ūni,	ūni,	ūni.	

## 146. Decline Duo and Tres.

Duo, <i>two</i> .			Tres, <i>three</i> .		
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. duo,	duæ,	duo.	N. tres,	tres,	tria.
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum.	G. trium,	trium,	trium.
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.
Ac. duos, -o,	duas,	duo.	Ac. tres,	tres,	tria.
V. duo,	duæ,	duo.	V. tres,	tres,	tria.
Ab. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	Ab. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

147. Decline *quatuor*, *quinque*, etc.

The cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, four, to *centum*, a hundred, both included, are indeclinable.

148. How are the numbers from *centum* to *mille* declined?

The hundreds after *centum* are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *decent-i*, -æ, -a; -ōrum, -ārum, -ōrum, etc.

149. How is *mille* declined?

*Mille* in the singular is *indeclinable*. In the plural it is declined like the plural of *sedile* (98): *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.

150. When is *mille* used as a noun, and when as an adjective?

*Mille* before a genitive plural is a noun; as, *mille homīnum*, a thousand (of) men; before a noun, in any other case, it is a plural adjective; as, *mille homīnes*, a thousand men.

## 151. How are ordinals declined?

Ordinals are declined like *bōnus*; as, *prim-us*, -a, -um, etc.

## 152. How are distributives declined?

Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnus*; as, *bīni*, -æ, -a; *bīnōrum*, -ārum, -ōrum, etc.

153. To the foregoing, what other classes of adjectives expressing numbers may be added?

TEMPORALS, which express *time*; as, *bīmus*, two years old; *trīmus*, three years old, etc.; *bīmestris* and *biennis*, of two years' continuance; *trīmestris*, etc.

INTERROGATIVES; as, *quot*, how many? *quōtus*, of what number? *quotěni*, how many each? *quoties* (adv.), how many times?

## CORRELATIVES.

154. What are correlatives?

Correlative words are such as have a reciprocal relation: that is, one implies the other; as, *father* and *child*, *husband* and *wife*. In the same way, *tālis*, such, implies *quālis*, as.

155. Mention some of the correlative adjectives.

The more common correlatives are

<i>Tālis</i> , such;	<i>quālis</i> , as.
<i>Tantus</i> , so great;	<i>quantus</i> , as.
<i>Tōt</i> , so many;	<i>quot</i> , as.
<i>Totīdem</i> , so many;	<i>quot</i> , as.
<i>Tōtus</i> , so great;	<i>quōtus</i> , as.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

156. Repeat the numeral adverbs to twelve; also for twenty, thirty, a hundred, a thousand, etc.

<i>Sēmel</i> , once.	<i>Tricies</i> , thirty times.
<i>Bis</i> , twice.	<i>Quadrages</i> , forty times.
<i>Ter</i> , thrice.	<i>Quinquages</i> , fifty times.
<i>Quāter</i> , four times.	<i>Centies</i> , a hundred times.
<i>Quinquies</i> , five times.	<i>Ducenties</i> , two hundred times.
<i>Sexies</i> , six times.	<i>Trecenties</i> , three hundred times.
<i>Septies</i> , seven times.	<i>Quadringenties</i> , four hundred times.
<i>Octies</i> , eight times.	<i>Quingenties</i> , five hundred times.
<i>Novies</i> , nine times.	<i>Millies</i> , a thousand times.
<i>Decies</i> , ten times.	<i>Bis millies</i> , two thousand times.
<i>Undecies</i> , eleven times.	<i>Ter millies</i> , three thousand times.
<i>Duodecies</i> , twelve times.	<i>Decies millies</i> , ten thousand times.
<i>Vicies</i> , twenty times.	<i>Vicies millies</i> , twenty thousand times.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

157. What are the terminations of the comparative degree and what of the superlative degree of an adjective?

The regular *comparative* terminates in *-ior*, *-ior*, *-ius*; and the *superlative* in  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{issimus, issima, issimum, or} \\ \textit{errimus, errima, errimum.} \end{array} \right.$

158. How are the comparative and superlative formed?

An adjective is regularly compared by adding to the root *ior* for the *comparative* and *issimus* for the *superlative*; as, *alt-us*, *alt-ior*, *alt-issimus*; *fēlix*, *felic-ior*, *felic-issimus*.

Compare DURUS, *hard*; BREVIS, *short*; AUDAX, *brave*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Dūr-us,	dur-ior,	dur-issimus.
Brēv-is,	brev-ior,	brev-issimus.
Audax,	audac-ior,	audac-issimus.

159. When the positive ends in *er*, how is the superlative formed?

When the positive ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus* to the positive; as, *tēner*, *tenerior*, *tenerrimus*.

Compare PAUPER, *poor*; PULCHER, *fair*; and CELER, *swift*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrimus.
Pulcher,	pulchior,	pulcherrimus.
Cēler,	celerior,	celerrimus.

## IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

160. Compare the following irregular adjectives:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.			
Bōnus,	melior,	optimus;	<i>good,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>best.</i>
Mālus,	pejor,	pessimus;	<i>bad,</i>	<i>worse,</i>	<i>worst.</i>
Magnus,	major,	maximus;	<i>great,</i>	<i>greater,</i>	<i>greatest.</i>
Multus,	plus,	plurimus;	<i>much,</i>	<i>more,</i>	<i>most.</i>
Parvus,	minor,	minimus;	<i>little,</i>	<i>less,</i>	<i>least.</i>



161. Compare the following, which form the superlative in *līmus*:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Facīlis,	facilior,	facillīmus ;	<i>easy, etc.</i>
Gracīlis,	gracilior,	gracillīmus ;	<i>lean, etc.</i>
Humīlis,	humilior,	humillīmus ;	<i>low, etc.</i>
Imbecīllis,	imbecilior,	imbecillīmus ;	<i>weak, etc.</i>
Simīlis,	similior,	simillīmus ;	<i>like, etc.</i>

162. Compare the following, which have the *comparative regular*, but the *superlative irregular*:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Cīter,	cīterior,	cītīmus ;	<i>near, etc.</i>
Dexter,	dexterior,	dextīmus ;	<i>right, etc.</i>
Exter,	exterior,	extrēmus, or extīmus ;	<i>outward, etc.</i>
Infērus,	inferior,	infīmus, or īmus ;	<i>low, etc.</i>
Intērus,	interior,	intīmus ;	<i>inward, etc.</i>
Matūrus,	māturior,	{ maturrīmus, or } { maturissīmus ; }	<i>ripe, etc.</i>
Postērus,	posterior,	{ postrēmus, or } { postūmus ; }	<i>behind, etc.</i>
Sinister,	sinisterior,	sinistīmus ;	<i>left, etc.</i>
Supērus,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus ;	<i>high, etc.</i>
Vētus,	veterior,	veterrīmus ;	<i>old, etc.</i>
Dīves,	{ divitior, or } { ditior,	{ divitissīmus, or } { ditissīmus ; }	<i>rich, etc.</i>

163. How are compounds in *dicus*, *fīcus*, *lōquus*, and *vōlus* compared ?

Compounds in *dicus*, *fīcus*, *lōquus*, and *vōlus* are compared by *entior* and *entissīmus*: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Benefīcus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissīmus,	<i>beneficent.</i>
Benevōlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissīmus,	<i>benevolent.</i>
Magnilōquus,	magniloquentior,	magniloquentissīmus,	<i>boasting.</i>
Maledīcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissīmus,	<i>railing.</i>
Mirifīcus,	mirificentior,	mirificentissīmus,	<i>wonderful.</i>

164. Compare the following, which *want the positive*:

COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
Deterior,	detrerrimus;	worse,	worst.
Ocior,	ocissimus;	swifter,	swiftest.
Prior,	primus;	former,	first.
Propior,	proximus;	nearer,	nearest.
Ulterior,	ultimus;	farther,	farthest.

165. Compare the following, which *want the comparative*:

POSITIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
Inclytus,	inclytissimus;	renowned,	most renowned.
Invictus,	invictissimus;	invincible,	most invincible.
Meritus,	meritissimus;	deserving,	most deserving.
Nup̃erus,	nuperrimus;	late,	latest.
Par,	parissimus;	equal,	—.
Sacer,	sacerrimus;	sacred,	most sacred.

166. Compare the following, which *want the superlative*:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		
Adolescens,	adolescentior	young,	younger.
Diuturnus,	diuturnior;	lasting,	more lasting.
Ingens,	ingentior;	huge,	huger.
Juvenis,	junior;	young,	younger.
Op̃imus,	opimior;	rich,	richer.
Pr̃onus,	pronior;	prone,	more prone.
S̃atur,	saturior;	full,	fuller.
S̃enex,	senior;	old,	older.

167. How are *youngest* and *oldest* expressed?

*Youngest* is expressed by *miñimus natu*, the least by birth; *oldest* by *max̃imus natu*, the greatest by birth.

168. What is to be remarked of *anterior*, *sequior*, *nequam*, and *fr̃ugi*?

*Anterior*, *former*, and *sequior*, *worse*, are found only in the comparative. *Ñequam*, worthless (indec.), has *nequior*, *nequis̃imus*. *Fr̃ugi*, frugal (indec.), has *frugalior*, *frugaliss̃imus*.



169. In what other way is comparison sometimes expressed?

Comparison is sometimes expressed by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *valde* or *maxīme*, most, to the positive.

170. When is this form of comparison used?

The comparison by *māgis* and *valde* or *maxīme* is especially used when the adjective is of *more than two syllables* and a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case; as, *idoneus*, fit; *māgis idoneus*, *valde* or *maxīme idoneus*: *arduus*, high; *māgis arduus*, *valde* or *maxīme arduus*.

171. What force does *quam* prefixed give to a superlative?

*Quam* prefixed to a superlative makes it emphatic; as, *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrīme*, as speedily as possible.

## PRONOUNS.

172. What is a pronoun?

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

173. How many pronouns are there in Latin?

In Latin there are eighteen simple pronouns; namely, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, substantive; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, adjective.

Decline EGO, TU, and SUI.

Ego, I, First Person, Masc. or Fem.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>ēgo</i> , <i>I</i> ;	Nom.	<i>nos</i> , <i>we</i> ;
Gen.	<i>mei</i> , <i>of me</i> ;	Gen.	<i>nostrūm</i> , or <i>nostri</i> , <i>of us</i> ;
Dat.	<i>mīhi</i> , <i>to or for me</i> ;	Dat.	<i>nōbis</i> , <i>to or for us</i> ;
Acc.	<i>me</i> , <i>me</i> ;	Acc.	<i>nos</i> , <i>us</i> ;
Voc.	—	Voc.	—
Abl.	<i>me</i> , <i>in, with, by me</i> .	Abl.	<i>nōbis</i> , <i>in, with, by us</i> .

TU, *thou*, Second Person, *Masc.* or *Fem.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. tu, <i>thou</i> or <i>you</i> ;	N. vos, <i>ye</i> or <i>you</i> ;
G. tui, <i>of thee</i> or <i>of you</i> ;	G. vēstrum or vestri, <i>of you</i> ;
D. tibi, <i>to</i> or <i>for thee</i> or <i>you</i> ;	D. vōbis, <i>to</i> or <i>for you</i> ;
Ac. te, <i>thee</i> or <i>you</i> ;	Ac. vos, <i>you</i> ;
V. tu, <i>O thou</i> or <i>you</i> ;	V. vos, <i>O ye</i> or <i>you</i> ;
Ab. te, <i>in, with, by thee</i> or <i>you</i> .	Ab. vōbis, <i>in, with, by you</i> .

SUI, *of himself, herself, itself*, Third Person, *Masc., Fem.* or *Neut.*,  
Reflexive.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. —	N. —
G. sui, <i>of himself, herself, etc.</i> ;	G. sui, <i>of themselves</i> ;
D. sibi, <i>to</i> or <i>for himself, etc.</i> ;	D. sibi, <i>to</i> or <i>for themselves</i> ;
Ac. se, <i>himself, etc.</i> ;	Ac. se, <i>themselves</i> ;
V. —	V. —
Ab. se, <i>in, with, by himself, etc.</i>	Ab. se, <i>in, with, by themselves</i> .

174. Why is *sui* called a reflexive pronoun?

*Sui* and its derived adjective pronoun, *suius*, are called reflexive because they refer to the principal subject of a sentence, which is generally the nominative to the leading verb.

175. How are the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, and *sui* rendered emphatic?

*Ego* is made emphatic by the addition of the particle *met*; as, *egōmet*, *mēmēt*: *tu*, by the addition of *te* or *tēmet*; as, *tute*, *tutēmet*: and *se*, by reduplication; as, *sēse*.

176. How is the preposition *cum* used with these pronouns?

In the ablative, with *cum*, *cum* is generally *suffixed* to the pronouns; as, *mēcūm*, *tēcūm*, *sēcūm*, *nobiscūm*, *vobiscūm*.

177. What is the difference in the use of the genitives plural, *nostrūm*, *nostri*, and *vestrūm*, *vestri*?

*Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are used after partitives and interrogatives; as, *nemo vestrūm*, *quis vestrūm*? They are also the

proper forms to be joined with *omnium*; as, *omnium nostrum parens*.

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

## POSSESSIVES.

178. What are possessive pronouns, and which are they?

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS denote possession. They are

Meus,	mea,	meum;	<i>my, or mine (from me).</i>
Tuus,	tua,	tuum;	<i>thy, or thine (from tu).</i>
Suus,	sua,	suum;	<i>his, her, its own (from sui).</i>
Noster,	nostra,	nostrum;	<i>our, or ours (from nos).</i>
Vester,	vestra,	vestrum;	<i>your, or yours (from vos).</i>

179. How are these declined?

*Meus, tuus, and suus* are declined like *bōnus* (128); *noster* and *vester* like *āter* (129).

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

180. What are demonstrative pronouns, and which are they?

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are such as point out precisely a person or thing already known. They are *hic*, this; *ille*, *iste*, is, that.

Decline *Hic*, *this*; *ILLE*, *ISTE*, and *Is*, *that*.

*Hic*, *HÆC*, *Hoc*, *this*. Plural, *these*.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	<i>hic</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .		<i>hi</i> ,	<i>hæ</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> .
G.	<i>hujus</i> ,	<i>hujus</i> ,	<i>hujus</i> .		<i>hōrum</i> ,	<i>hārum</i> ,	<i>hōrum</i> .
D.	<i>huic</i> ,	<i>huic</i> ,	<i>huic</i> .		<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> .
Ac.	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .		<i>hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> .
V.	—	—	—		—	—	—
Ab.	<i>hoc</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .		<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> .

ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that*. Plural, *those*.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	ille,	illa,	illud.		illi,	illæ,	illa.
G.	illius,	illius,	illius.		illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
D.	illi,	illi,	illi.		illis,	illis,	illis.
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud.		illos,	illas,	illa.
V.	—	—	—		—	—	—
Ab.	illo,	illa,	illo.		illis,	illis,	illis.

ISTE is declined like ILLE.

Nom. iste, ista, istud. Gen. istius. Dat. isti, *etc.*IS, EA, ID, *that*. Plural, *those*.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	is,	ea,	id.		ii,	eæ,	ea.
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus.		eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D.	ei,	ei,	ei.		eis, or iis,	eis, or iis,	eis, or iis.
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id.		eos,	eas,	ea.
V.	—	—	—		—	—	—
Ab.	eo,	ea,	eo.		eis, or iis,	eis, or iis,	eis, or iis.

181. What is the distinction between *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* as to personal application?

*Hic* refers to the person or thing nearest the speaker, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *first person*.

*Iste* refers to the person spoken to, or to something pertaining to him, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *second person*.

*Ille* refers to the person or thing spoken of, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *third person*.

182. When *hic* and *ille* are used, what is the distinction?

*Hic* refers to the person or thing nearest the speaker, or to what has just been spoken of; *ille* to the person or thing farthest from the speaker, or to what was formerly spoken of. This, however, is sometimes reversed.

183. What other peculiar use has *ille*?

*Ille* is used to indicate *celebrity*, and is then to be translated by "the"; as, *Alexander ille magnus*, Alexander the Great; *Medæa illa*, the celebrated Medea.

184. Of what is *idem*, the same, compounded, and how is it declined?

*Idem*, the same, is compounded of *is* and the syllable *dem*; *m* is changed into *n* before *dem* for euphony or easiness of pronunciation. It is thus declined:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> .	<i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> .
G. <i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> .	<i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> .
D. <i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> ,	<i>eidem</i> .	<i>eisdem</i> ,	<i>or iisdem</i> ,	<i>etc.</i>
Ac. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> .	<i>eosdem</i> ,	<i>easdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> .
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> .	<i>eisdem</i> ,	<i>or iisdem</i> ,	<i>etc.</i>

185. What should be noticed with regard to *idem*?

In *īdem*, *i* in the singular masculine is *long*, in the neuter it is short.

Decline *IPSE*, *self*, or *he, she, it* (emphatic).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. <i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> .	<i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsæ</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> .
G. <i>ipsīus</i> ,	<i>ipsīus</i> ,	<i>ipsīus</i> .	<i>ipsōrum</i> ,	<i>ipsārum</i> ,	<i>ipsōrum</i> .
D. <i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> .	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> .
Ac. <i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsam</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> .	<i>ipsos</i> ,	<i>ipsas</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> .
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>ipso</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,	<i>ipso</i> .	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> .

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. What is a relative pronoun?

A RELATIVE PRONOUN is one that refers to some person or thing mentioned before, which is called its *antecedent*.

Decline the relative pronoun QUI.

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which, or that.* Relative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. qui,	quæ,	quod.	qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D. cui,	cui,	cui.	queis, or	quībus,	<i>etc.</i>
Ac. quem,	quam,	quod.	quos,	quas,	quæ.
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quō,	quā,	quō.	queis, or	quībus,	<i>etc.</i>

187. What is to be remarked of *quīs* and *quī* with the circumflex accent?

*Quīs* with the circumflex accent is sometimes used for *queis* or *quībus*, and *quī* with the same accent for the ablative singular in *all genders*, and sometimes, though rarely, for the ablative plural.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. What is an interrogative pronoun?

An INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is one that is used to ask questions.

Decline the interrogative QUIS.

QUIS, QUÆ, QUID, or QUOD, *who? which? what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. {quis, or qui, }	quæ,	{quid, or quod.	qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D. cui,	cui,	cui.	queis, or	quībus,	<i>etc.</i>
Ac. quem,	quam,	{quid, or quod.	quos,	quas,	quæ.
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quō,	quā,	quō.	queis, or	quībus,	<i>etc.</i>

189. What is the difference between *quis* and *qui*, and *quid* and *quod*, as interrogatives?

*Quis* and *quid*, as interrogatives, are used as substantives; *qui* and *quod* as adjectives. *Quis* and *quid*, however, are sometimes used adjectively.

190. Mention some other interrogative pronouns.

Quisnam? <i>who? what?</i>	Numquis? <i>is any one?</i>
Quinam? <i>which? what?</i>	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Ecquis? or ecquisnam? <i>is any one?</i>	Cujas? <i>of what country?</i>

191. How are these declined?

Those compounded of *quis* or *qui* are declined like the simple words of which they are compounded, the prefix or suffix remaining unchanged. *Cujus*, which is defective, is declined like *bōnus*, and *cujas* like an adjective of one termination: Gen. *cujātis*; Dat. *cujāti*, etc.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

192. What are indefinite pronouns?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are such as point out persons or things indefinitely: that is, they indicate *no particular* person or thing.

193. Mention some of the indefinite pronouns.

The following are some of the indefinite pronouns. They are all compounds of *quis* or *qui*. *Qui* is always put first; *quis* is sometimes first and sometimes last.

Aliquis, <i>some one.</i>	Quicunque, <i>whoever, whosoever.</i>
Quisque, <i>each, every.</i>	Unusquisque, <i>each one.</i>
Quisquis, <i>whoever, whosoever.</i>	Quīdam, <i>a certain one.</i>
Quisquam, <i>any one.</i>	Quilibet, } <i>any one you please.</i>
Quispiam, <i>some one.</i>	Quīvis, }

194. How are these declined?

All the compounds of *quis* or *qui* are declined like *quis* or *qui*, the prefix or suffix being unchanged. In *unusquisque* both



*unus* and *quis* must be inflected; thus, Gen. *unuscujusque*; Dat. *unicuique*, etc.

NOTE.—*Aliquis* makes *aliqua* in the feminine.

195. What euphonic change is made in *quidam*?

In *quidam*, *m* is changed to *n* when it comes before *dam*; as *quendam* instead of *quemdam*.

196. What is to be noted of *nequis*, *numquis*, and *siquis*?

*Nēquis*, *numquis*, and *sīquis* are always compound pronouns, though commonly they are written separately; as, *ne quis*, *num quis*, *si quis*.

## VERBS.

197. What is a verb?

A VERB is a word that affirms *existence* or a *state of being*; as, *sum*, I am; *sēdeo*, I sit: or an *act performed*; as, *āmo*, I love; *lēgo*, I read: or an *action received*; as, *doceor*, I am taught; *vapūlo*, I am beaten.

198. What is the person or thing of which the affirmation is made called, and in what case is it put?

The person or thing of which the affirmation is made is called *the subject*, and is put in the *nominative case*; as, *puer amat*, the boy loves. Here *puer* is the *subject* (382).

199. What is the verb called in relation to the subject?

The verb in relation to the subject is called the *predicate*; as, *puer amat*, the boy loves. Here *amat* is the *predicate* (382).

200. Is the subject of a verb always in the nominative and the verb itself personal?

In certain constructions, the subject is in the *accusative* and the verb in the *infinitive*, preceded by another verb; as, *dicit se scribēre*, he says that he is writing. Here *se* is the accusative subject of *scribēre*.



201. Into what different classes are verbs divided?

Verbs are divided into *regular*, *irregular*, *transitive*, *intransitive*, *deponent*, *common*, *neuter passive*, *defective*, and *impersonal* verbs.

202. What is a regular verb?

A **REGULAR VERB** is one that is formed and inflected according to certain rules.

203. What is an irregular verb?

An **IRREGULAR VERB** is one that, in some of its parts, deviates in formation and inflection from a regular verb.

204. What is a transitive verb?

A **TRANSITIVE VERB** is one in which the action passes (*transit*) from the doer or subject to some other person or thing called the *object*; as, *puer amat parentes*, the boy loves his parents. Here *parentes* is the object of *amat*.

205. What is an intransitive verb?

An **INTRANSITIVE VERB** is one in which the action does not pass (*in*, or *non*, *transit*) from the doer or subject to some other person or thing; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run.

206. What is a deponent verb?

A **DEPONENT VERB** is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active signification*; as, *loquor*, I speak; *utor*, I use. It is so called because it (*depōnit*) lays aside the active form.

207. What are common verbs?

**COMMON VERBS** are those which under a passive form have an *active* or *passive signification*; as, *crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

208. What are neuter passive verbs?

**NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS** are those which *in form* are *partly active* and *partly passive*; as, *audeo*, I dare; *gaudeo*, I rejoice. The passive forms are the perfect and the tenses derived from it.

209. What are defective verbs?

**DEFECTIVE VERBS** are such as want some of their parts. *Aio*, I affirm, and *inquam*, I say, are defective verbs.

210. What are impersonal verbs?

IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular; as, *dēcet*, it behoves; *licet*, it is allowed.

211. Into what further classes may verbs be subdivided?

Verbs may be further subdivided into

1. *Frequentative verbs*, which denote *repeated* action. These end in *ito*, and are all of the first conjugation; as, *clāmīto* (*freq.* of *clāmo*), I cry frequently.

2. *Inceptive verbs*, which mark the *beginning* of an action. These end in *asco*, *esco*, or *isco*, and are of the third conjugation; as, *labasco* (from *lābo*), I begin to fall—I totter; *calesco* (from *caleo*), I grow hot; *tremisco* (from *trēmo*), I begin to tremble.

3. *Desiderative verbs*, which signify a *desire* or *intention* to do a thing. These end in *urio*, and are of the fourth conjugation; as, *cœnaturio* (from *cæno*), I want my supper; *nupturio* (from *nūbo*, *nuptum*), I desire to marry.

4. *Diminutives*, which represent an action as *little* or *trifling*. These end in *illo*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *cantillo* (from *canto*), I hum a tune; *sorbillo* (from *sorbeo*), I sip.

5. *Intensives*, which denote *eagerness* of action. These are few in number, and end in *sso*; as, *facesso* (from *facio*), I do eagerly; *petesso* or *petisso* (from *pēto*), I strive after.

## VOICE.

212. How many voices are there in Latin?

In Latin there are *two voices*: the *active*, which represents the subject as acting, and the *passive*, which represents the subject as being acted upon; as, active voice, *āmo*, I love; passive voice, *āmor*, I am loved.

## MOODS.

213. What is mood?

MOOD is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the action or state of the verb.

214. How many moods has a Latin verb?

A Latin verb has *four moods*; namely, the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *imperative*, and *infinitive*.

215. How is the indicative mood used?

The *indicative mood* is used simply to assert a fact; as, *amat*, he loves: or to ask a question; as, *amatne*, does he love? It is sometimes also used in a conditional clause, when the condition is admitted as a fact; as, *si vāles*, *bēne est*, if you are in good health, it is well.

216. How is the subjunctive mood used?

The *subjunctive mood* is used to express the state or act of a verb, *not as a fact, but as a possibility*, including *power*, *liberty*, *duty*, and *obligation*. It is used in dependent clauses (380) after certain conjunctions, or independently and without a conjunction as a softened imperative.

217. How is the imperative mood used?

The *imperative mood* is used for *commanding*, *exhorting*, or *entreating*.

218. How is the infinitive mood used?

The *infinitive mood* is used to express the state or act of the verb in an *unlimited* manner; that is, without any restriction as to person or number.

## TENSES.

219. What is tense?

TENSE means *time*, and is used to distinguish the state or action of a verb in this respect.

220. How many tenses are there?

There are *six tenses*; namely, *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, *future*, and *future perfect*.

221. Into what two classes are tenses divided?

Tenses are divided into two classes, *primary* and *secondary*.

222. How are these tenses used?

The *primary* tenses are used to express actions as *present* or *future*; the *secondary*, those which are past.

223. Which are the primary tenses, and which the secondary?

<i>The Primary Tenses are,</i>	<i>The Secondary Tenses are,</i>
Present,	Imperfect,
Perfect <i>definite</i> ,	Perfect <i>indefinite</i> ,
Futures.	Pluperfect.

224. For what is the present tense used?

The *present tense* is used to express an action that is *now* going on; as, *āmo*, I love, do love, or am loving.

225. For what is the imperfect tense used?

The *imperfect tense* is used to express an action as *past*, but *not completed*; as, *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving: also for *repeated* or *customary* actions in past time; as, *equitābam*, I used to ride.

226. How is the perfect definite used?

The *perfect definite* is used to represent an action as *past* and *completed*, but with reference to the present: its sign is *have*; as, *amāvi*, I *have* loved.

227. How is the perfect indefinite used?

The *perfect indefinite* is used to express an action simply as past and completed, without any reference to the present; as, *amāvi*, I loved, or I did love. This is sometimes called the *aorist perfect*.

228. Has the Latin two forms of the perfect?

There is but one form for the perfect. Whether the perfect is definite or indefinite is determined by the connection.

229. How is the pluperfect tense used?

The *pluperfect tense* is used to express an action as past and completed before some other past action: its sign is *had*; as, *amavēram*, I *had* loved.

230. How is the future tense used?

The *future tense* is used to express an action that will take place in some *future time*: its sign is *shall* or *will*; as, *amābo*, I *shall* or *will* love.

231. How is the future perfect used :

The *future perfect* is used to express an action that will be completed *before* some other future action or event : its sign in the first person is *shall have* ; in the second person *will have* : as, *amavĕro*, I *shall have* loved ; *amavĕris*, thou *wilt have* loved, etc.

#### ENGLISH OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

232. In the subjunctive mood, what is the sign of the present tense ?

In the subjunctive mood the sign of the present tense is *may* or *can* ; as, *āmem*, I *may* or *can* love. With a conjunction, it is often rendered by the present indicative ; as, *si āmem*, if I love. Without a conjunction, in an independent clause (380), it is used as a softened imperative ; as, *āmem*, let me love.

233. What is the sign of the imperfect tense ?

The sign of the imperfect subjunctive is *might*, *could*, *would*, *should* ; as, *amārem*, I *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* love. With a conjunction, it often takes the indicative meaning ; as, *si amārem*, if I loved.

234. What is the sign of the perfect tense ?

The sign of the perfect subjunctive is *may have* ; as, *amavĕrim*, I *may have* loved. With adjuncts, its meanings are so modified that they may be best learned by practice.\*

235. What is the sign of the pluperfect ?

The sign of the pluperfect subjunctive is *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have* ; as, *amavissem*, I *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have* loved. This tense, like the perfect, is variously rendered.

236. What is the sign of the future subjunctive ?

There is no future tense in the subjunctive mood.

---

\* The attention of the pupil should be directed to the practice of the best writers in the Latin language in the use of both the perfect and pluperfect tenses.

## ENGLISH OF THE IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

237. Give the English of the imperative.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

2d Person, Love thou, or do thou love,	Love ye, or do ye love,
3d Person, Let him love ;	Let them love.

238. Give the infinitive meanings.

*Pres.* To love. *Perf.* To have loved. *Fut.* To be about to love.

## INFINITIVE WITH AN ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT.

239. What modification of meaning does the infinitive undergo when it has an accusative subject before it?

With an accusative subject before it, the infinitive takes the meaning of a personal verb, and its time from the tense of the verb by which it is preceded. Thus,

## PRESENT after a

PRESENT: *dicat* se amāre, he *says* that he loves, does love, or is loving.PAST: *dixit* se amāre, he *said* that he loved, did love, or was loving.

## PERFECT after a

PRESENT: *dicat* se amavisse, he *says* that he loved, did love, or has loved.PAST: *dixit* se amavisse, he *said* that he had loved.

## FUTURE after a

PRESENT: *dicat* se amatūrum fuisse, he *says* } that he would have loved.PAST: *dixit* se amatūrum fuisse, he *said* }

## PARTICIPLES.

240. How many participles has a Latin verb, and how are they Englished?

A Latin verb has *four* participles, which terminate and are Englished thus:

ACTIVE. { PRESENT: *ns*; as, *amans*, loving.  
 { FUTURE in *rus*; as, *amatūrus*, { about to love, or going to  
 { love.

PASSIVE. { PERFECT: *tus*; as, *amatus*, loved, or being loved.  
 { FUTURE in *dus*; as, *amandus*, { to be necessary, worthy, or  
 { proper to be loved.

241. What participles are wanting in Latin?

The Latin has no *perfect participle active* nor *present passive*.



242. How is the perfect participle supplied?

The perfect participle active is supplied either (1) by the perfect passive in the case absolute, or (2) by *quum* with the pluperfect subjunctive; as,

(1) *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*—Cæsar, these things being said (or having said these things), departed.

(2) *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset*, etc.—Cæsar, when he had said (or having said) these things, etc.

243. How is the perfect participle passive supplied?

The perfect participle passive is often used in a present sense; as, *amatus*, loved, or *being* loved.

244. How is the perfect participle of a deponent verb Englished?

The perfect participle of a deponent verb is Englished by *having*; as, *loquutus*, having spoken; *pollicitus*, having promised.

## GERUNDS — GERUNDIVES — SUPINES.

245. What is a gerund?

A GERUND is a verbal noun, used only in the singular number, nominative and vocative wanting. It is Englished, like the present participle active, by *ing*; as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

246. What is a gerundive?

The participle in *dus*, when used as a gerund, is called a *gerundive*.

247. What is a supine, how many are there, and how rendered?

A SUPINE is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular. There are *two* supines, called the *former* and *latter*. The former is Englished like the present infinitive active, and the latter like the present infinitive passive. Thus,

Former Supine, *amātum*, to love.

Latter Supine, *amātu*, to be loved.

## CONJUGATION.

248. What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb?

The CONJUGATION OF A VERB is the arrangement of its moods, tenses, voices, numbers, and persons according to a certain order.

249. How many conjugations are there, and how are they distinguished?

There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS of verbs, distinguished from each other by the vowel before *re* of the infinitive:

The FIRST has *ā* before *re*; as, *amāre*, to love.

The SECOND has *ē* before *re*; as, *monēre*, to warn.

The THIRD has *ě* before *re*; as, *regěre*, to rule.

The FOURTH has *ī* before *re*; as, *audīre*, to hear.

250. Give the regular terminations of the principal parts of the four conjugations.

	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PERFECT INDICATIVE.	FIRST SUPINE.
<i>First:</i>	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.
<i>Second:</i>	-eo,	-ēre,	-ui,	-ītum.
<i>Third:</i>	{-o, or -io, }	-ěre,	{-i, or -si,	-tum, or -sum.
<i>Fourth:</i>	-io,	-īre,	-īvi,	-ītum.

251. What remark may be made as to the terminations of the perfects and supines of the third conjugation?

The perfects and supines of the third conjugation are so modified by the connecting letters and the changes which they undergo in combination that they can not be briefly specified. They are most readily learned by practice.

252. Conjugate a regular verb in each of the four conjugations.

- |    |           |          |          |           |          |
|----|-----------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. | Am-o,     | am-āre,  | amāv-i,  | amāt-um,  | to love. |
| 2. | Mon-eo,   | mon-ēre, | monu-i,  | monīt-um, | to warn. |
| 3. | { Rēg-o,  | reg-ěre, | rex-i,   | rect-um,  | to rule. |
|    | { Cap-io, | cap-ěre, | cēp-i,   | capt-um,  | to take. |
| 4. | Aud-io,   | aud-īre, | audīv-i, | audīt-um, | to hear. |



253. How many roots has a verb, and how are they obtained?

A verb has *three roots*. The *first* is obtained by cutting off *re* of the infinitive with the vowel before it; the *second*, by cutting off *i* from the perfect; and the *third*, by cutting off *um* from the supine.

254. Name the roots of *āmo*, *monco*, *rēgo*, *cāpio*, and *audio*?

	FIRST ROOT.	SECOND ROOT.	THIRD ROOT.
AMO :	am-,	amāv-,	amāt-.
MONEO :	mon-,	monu-,	monīt-.
REGO :	reg-,	rex-,	rect-.
CAPIO :	cap-,	cēp-,	capt-.
AUDIO :	aud-,	audīv-,	audīt-.

255. Enumerate the tenses formed from the different roots, as shown in the following table:

	FIRST ROOT.	SECOND ROOT.	THIRD ROOT.
<i>Indicative</i> ,	Present,	Perfect,	—
	Imperfect,	Pluperfect,	—
	Future;	Future perfect.	—
<i>Subjunctive</i> ,	Present,	Perfect,	—
	Imperfect;	Pluperfect.	—
<i>Imperative</i> ,	Present.	—	—
<i>Infinitive</i> ,	Present;	Perfect;	Future.
<i>Participles</i> ,	Present, <i>act.</i> ,	—	Future, <i>act.</i> ,
	Future, <i>pass.</i> ;	—	Perfect, <i>pass.</i>
	Gerunds.		Supines.

256. How are the different parts of the verb formed from these roots?

The manner in which the different parts of the verbs are formed from the roots is seen from the following

#### SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF FORMATION OF THE TENSES (ACTIVE VOICE).

			FIRST ROOT.						
INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERAT.	INFI.	PARTICIPLE.		GER-UND.
PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PRES.	IMPER.	IMPERF.	PRES.	PRES.	FUT. PER.	
1. Am-o,	-ābam,	-abo,	-em,	-ārem,	-a or -āto,	-ūre,	-ans,	-andus,	-andi.
2. Mon-co,	-ēbam,	-ebo,	-eum,	-ērem,	-e or -ēto,	-ēre,	-ens,	-endus,	-endi.
3. Reg-o,	-ēbam,	-am.	-am,	-ērem,	-e or -īto,	-ēre,	-ens,	-endus,	-endi.
4. Aud-io,	-iēbam,	-iam,	-iam,	-īrem,	-i or -īto,	-īre,	-iens,	-iendus,	-iendi.

## SECOND ROOT.

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		INFINITIVE.
PERFECT.	PLUPERF.	FU. PERF.	PERFECT.	PLUPERF.	PERFECT.
1. Amāv- <i>i</i> ,	-ēram,	-ēro,	-ērīm,	-issem,	-isse.
2. Monu- <i>i</i> ,	-ēram,	-ēro,	-ērīm,	-issem,	-isse.
3. Rex- <i>i</i> ,	-ēram,	-ēro,	-ērīm,	-issem,	-isse.
4. Audīv- <i>i</i> ,	-ēram,	-ēro,	-ērīm,	-issem,	-isse.

## THIRD ROOT.

FUTURE INFINITIVE.			FUTURE PARTICIPLE.		SUPINE.
1. Amat-	-ūrus esse or fuisse,				
2. Monit-					
3. Rect-					
4. Audit-					
			-ūrus,	-ūra,	-ūrum,
					-um.

257. Do verbs in *io*, of the third conjugation, terminate in every respect like *rēgo*?

Verbs in *io*, of the third conjugation, are irregular in their formation from the first root. They terminate like verbs of the fourth conjugation in the *imperfect* and *future indicative*, *present subjunctive*, *present participle active*, *future participle passive*, and *gerund*.

258. How are the tenses of the passive voice formed?

The tenses of the passive voice are formed directly from those of the active by *adding r* to any tense ending in *o*, or *changing* the final *m* of any tense into *r* for the passive, except in the compound tenses, as may be seen in the following

## SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF FORMATION OF THE TENSES (PASSIVE VOICE).

## FIRST ROOT.

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	INFIN.	PARTICI.
PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.	PRES.	IMPERF.	PRESENT.	PRES.	FUTURE.
1. Am-or,	-ābar,	-ībor,	-er,	-ārer,	-āre or -ātor,	-āri,	-andus.
2. Mon-eor,	-ēbar,	-ēbor,	-ear,	-ērer,	-ēre or -ētor,	-ēri,	-endus.
3. Rēg-or,	-ēbar,	-ar,	-ar,	-ērer,	-ēre or -ītor,	-i,	-endus.
4. Aud-ior,	-iēbar,	-iar,	-iar,	-īrer,	-īre or -ītor,	-īri,	-iendus.

259. What tenses in the passive are compound?

The compound tenses in the passive are all the *perfects* and *pluperfects*, the *future perfect*, and the *future infinitive*.

260. How are the compound tenses formed?

The *compound tenses* are formed of the perfect participle passive and some part of the verb *sum*. The *future infinitive*, however, is formed of the first supine and *iri*.

261. Repeat the compound tenses as exhibited in the following

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE COMPOUND TENSES (PASSIVE VOICE).

THIRD ROOT.						
INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PERFECT.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PERFECT.	
1. Amātus	} <i>sum,</i>	} <i>eram,</i>	} <i>sim,</i>	} <i>essem,</i>	} <i>esse,</i>	
2. Monītus						
3. Rectus	} <i>or</i>	} <i>or</i>	} <i>or</i>	} <i>or</i>	} <i>or</i>	
4. Audītus						
	<i>fui,</i>	<i>fuēram, fuēro;</i>	<i>fuērim,</i>	<i>fuissem;</i>	<i>fuisse.</i>	
FUTURE INFINITIVE.						
	<i>Amātum</i>	} <i>iri.</i>				
	<i>Monītum</i>					
	<i>Rectum</i>					
	<i>Auditum</i>					

262. Is there any compound tense in the active voice?

There is one compound tense in the active voice, namely, the future infinitive, which is formed of the future participle in *rus*, with *esse* or *fuisse*. Thus,

Amatūrus	} <i>esse, or fuisse.</i>
Monitūrus	
Rectūrus	
Auditūrus	

263. In the formation of verbs, what will it be useful to remember?

It will be useful to remember (1) That in the *first* and *second* conjugations the *future indicative* ends in *bo* (*ābo, ēbo*), the *third* in *am* (*iam*), and the *fourth* in *īam*. (2) That the *imperfect subjunctive* of any verb is formed by *adding m* (pass. *r*) to the infinitive. (3) That the *imperative active* is formed by *cutting off re* from the infinitive. (4) That the *imperative passive* is the same in form as the infinitive active. (5) That the *present infinitive passive* of the *third* conjugation is formed by *changing or* or *ior* of the present into *i*.

264. What are the personal terminations?

The *personal* terminations, except of the perfect, are

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. m (o),	mus.	1. r,	mur.
2. s,	tis.	2. ris, or re,	mīni.
3. t,	nt.	3. tur,	ntur.

265. In regard to personal terminations, what will it be useful to remember?

In the personal terminations it will be useful to remember (1) that if a person ends in *s* (except *mus*) it is a *second* person; (2) that the *third* person singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*, and that these are made passive by the addition of *ur*; as, *amat*, *amant*, *amatur*, *amantur*.

266. What are the personal terminations of the perfect indicative active?

The personal terminations of the perfect indicative active are

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. i,	īmus.
2. isti,	istis.
3. it,	ērunt, or ēre.

267. What are the terminations of the imperative?

The terminations of the imperative are

ACTIVE VOICE.				
	FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUG.	THIRD CONJUG.	FOURTH CONJ.
<i>Singular.</i> {	2. ā, or āto,	ē, or ēto,	ě, or ěto,	ī, or ěto,
	3. āto;	ēto;	ěto;	ěto.
<i>Plural.</i> {	2. āte, or ātote,	ēte, or etōte,	ěte, or itōte,	ěte, or itōte,
	3. anto;	ento;	ento;	iunto.
PASSIVE VOICE.				
	FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUG.	THIRD CONJUG.	FOURTH CONJ.
<i>Singular.</i> {	2. āre, or ātor,	ēre, or ētor,	ěre, or ětor,	īre, or ětor,
	3. ātor;	ētor;	ětor;	ětor.
<i>Plural.</i> {	2. amīni,	emīni,	imīni,	imīni,
	3. antor;	entor;	untor;	iuntor.

## THE IRREGULAR VERB "SUM."

268. What is the irregular verb *sum* sometimes called?

The *irregular verb sum* is sometimes called a *substantive verb*, because it denotes *being* or simple *existence*; and sometimes an *auxiliary* or *helping verb*, because it is used as an *auxiliary* or *help* in inflecting some of the tenses of the passive voice.

269. Conjugate the verb *SUM*, to *be*.

PRESENT INDIC.	PRESENT INFIN.	PERFECT INDIC.	FUTURE PARTICIPLE.
sum;	esse;	fui;	futurus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, <i>I am</i> ;	sūmus, <i>we are</i> ;
2. ēs, <i>thou art</i> , or <i>you are</i> ;	estis, <i>ye or you are</i> ;
3. est, <i>he, she, or it is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i> .

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. eram, <i>I was</i> ;	erāmus, <i>we were</i> ;
2. eras, <i>thou wast</i> ;	erātis, <i>ye or you were</i> ;
3. erat, <i>he was</i> .	erant, <i>they were</i> .

## FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. ēro, <i>I shall or will be</i> ;	erīmus, <i>we shall or will be</i> ;
2. ēris, <i>thou shalt or wilt be</i> ;	erītis, <i>ye or you shall or will be</i> ;
3. ērit, <i>he shall or will be</i> .	erunt, <i>they shall or will be</i> .

## PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fui, <i>I was, or have been</i> ;	fūimus, <i>we were, or have been</i> ;
2. fuisti, <i>thou wast, or hast been</i> ;	fulistis, <i>ye or you were, or have been</i> ;
3. fuit, <i>he was, or has been</i> .	fuērunt, or fuēre, <i>they were, etc.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fueram, <i>I had been</i> ;	fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i> ;
2. fueras, <i>thou hast been</i> ;	fuerātis, <i>ye or you had been</i> ;
3. fuerat, <i>he had been</i> .	fuērant, <i>they had been</i> .

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuēro, <i>I shall have been</i> ;	fuerīmus, <i>we shall have been</i> ;
2. fuēris, <i>thou wilt have been</i> ;	fuerītis, <i>ye or you will have been</i> ;
3. fuērit, <i>he will have been</i> .	fuērint, <i>they will have been</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sim, <i>I may or can be;</i>	sīmus, <i>we may or can be;</i>
2. sis, <i>thou mayst or canst be;</i>	sītis, <i>ye or you may or can be;</i>
3. sit, <i>he may or can be.</i>	sint, <i>they may or can be.</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. essem, <i>I might, could, etc., be;</i>	essēmus, <i>we might, could, etc., be;</i>
2. esses, { <i>thou mightst, couldst,</i> <i>etc., be;</i>	essētis, { <i>ye or you might, could,</i> <i>etc., be;</i>
3. esset, <i>he might, could, etc., be.</i>	essent, <i>they might, could, etc., be.</i>

## PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuërim, <i>I may have been;</i>	fuerīmus, <i>we may have been;</i>
2. fuëris, <i>thou mayst have been;</i>	fuerītis, { <i>ye or you may have</i> <i>been;</i>
3. fuërit, <i>he may have been.</i>	fuërint, <i>they may have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuisset, { <i>I might, could, etc.,</i> <i>have been;</i>	fuissēmus, { <i>we might, could, etc.,</i> <i>have been;</i>
2. fuisses, { <i>thou mightst, couldst,</i> <i>etc., have been;</i>	fuissētis, { <i>ye or you might, could,</i> <i>etc., have been;</i>
3. fuisset, { <i>he might, could, etc.,</i> <i>have been.</i>	fuissent, { <i>they might, could, etc.,</i> <i>have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. ěs, or esto, <i>be thou, or do thou be;</i>	este, or estōte, <i>be ye, or do ye be;</i>
3. esto, <i>let him be.</i>	sunto, <i>let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i> . . . esse,	<i>to be.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i> . . . fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
<i>Future,</i> . . . futūrus esse,	<i>to be about to be.</i>
<i>Future Perfect,</i> futūrus fuisse,	<i>to have been about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Future,</i> futūrus, -ura, -urum,	<i>about to be.</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF SUM.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Present,</i>	sum,	sim,	ēs, or esto.	esse,	—
<i>Imperfect,</i>	eram,	essem,	—	—	—
<i>Future,</i>	ero,	—	—	futūrus esse,	futūrus.
<i>Perfect,</i>	fui,	fuērim,	—	fuisse,	—
<i>Pluperfect,</i>	fuēram,	fuissem.	—	—	—
<i>Fut. Perf.,</i>	fuēro.	—	—	futūrus fuisse.	—

## CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

270. Proceed now to conjugate the regular verbs AMO, MONEO, REGO, CAPIO, and AUDIO.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.,</i>	āmo,	} to love.
<i>Pres. Infin.,</i>	amāre,	
<i>Perf. Indic.,</i>	amāvī,	
<i>Supine,</i>	amātum,	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.,</i>	āmor,	} to be loved.
<i>Pres. Infin.,</i>	amāri,	
<i>Perf. Part.,</i>	amātus,	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I love, do love, or am loving.*

1. ām-o, *I love;*
2. ām-as, *thou lovest;*
3. ām-at, *he loves.*

## PLURAL.

1. am-āmus, *we love;*
2. am-ātis, *you love;*
3. am-ant, *they love.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I am loved.*

- ām-or, *I am loved;*  
am-āris, or re, *thou art loved;*  
am-ātur, *he is loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-āmur, *we are loved;*  
am-amīni, *you are loved;*  
am-antur, *they are loved.*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I loved, did love, or was loving.*

1. am-ābam, *I loved;*
2. am-ābas, *thou lovedst;*
3. am-ābat, *he loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. am-abāmus, *we loved;*
2. am-abātis, *you loved;*
3. ani-ābant, *they loved.*

## SINGULAR.

*I was loved.*

- am-ābar, *I was loved;*  
am-abāris, or re, *thou wast loved;*  
am-abātur, *he was loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-abāmur, *we were loved;*  
am-abamīni, *you were loved;*  
ani-abantur, *they were loved.*



## FUTURE TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I shall or will love.*

1. am-ābo, *I shall love;*
2. am-ābis, *thou wilt love;*
3. am-ābit, *he will love.*

## PLURAL.

1. am-abīmus, *we shall love;*
2. am-abītis, *you will love;*
3. am-ābunt, *they will love.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I shall or will be loved.*

- am-ābor, *I shall be loved;*  
 am-abēris, *or re, thou wilt be loved;*  
 am-abītur, *he will be loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-abīmur, *we shall be loved;*  
 am-abimīni, *you will be loved;*  
 am-abuntur, *they will be loved.*

## PERFECT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I loved, did love, or have loved.*

1. amāv-i, *I loved;*
2. amav-isti, *thou lovedst;*
3. amav-īt, *he loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. amavīmus, *we loved;*
2. amav-istis, *you loved;*
3. amav-ērunt, *or -ēre, they loved.*

## SINGULAR.

*I was or have been loved.*

- amātus sum, *or fui, I was loved;*  
 amātus ēs, *or fuisti, thou wast loved;*  
 amātus est, *or fuit, he was loved.*

## PLURAL.

- amāti sūmus, *or fuīmus, we were loved;*  
 amāti estis, *or fuistis, you were loved;*  
 amāti sunt, *fuērunt, or fuēre, they were loved.*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I had loved.*

1. amav-ēram, *I had loved;*
2. amav-ēras, *thou hadst loved;*
3. amav-ērat, *he had loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. amav-erāmus, *we had loved;*
2. amav-erātis, *you had loved;*
3. amav-ērunt, *they had loved.*

## SINGULAR.

*I had been loved.*

- amātus ēram, *or fuēram, I had been loved;*  
 amātus ēras, *or fuēras, thou hadst been loved;*  
 amātus ērat, *or fuērat, he had been loved.*

## PLURAL.

- amāti erāmus, *or fuerāmus, we had been loved;*  
 amāti erātis, *or fuerātis, you had been loved;*  
 amāti ērant, *or fuērant, they had been loved.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I shall or will have loved.*

1. amav-ěro, *I shall have loved;*
2. amav-ěris, *thou wilt have loved;*
3. amav-ěrit, *he will have loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. amav-erĭmus, *we shall have loved;*
2. amav-erĭtis, *you will have loved;*
3. amav-ěrĭnt, *they will have loved.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I shall or will have been loved.*

- amātus ěro, or fuěro, *I shall have been loved;*  
 amātus ěris, or fuěris, *thou wilt have been loved;*  
 amātus ěrit, or fuěrit, *he will have been loved.*

## PLURAL.

- amāti erĭmus, or fuerĭmus, *we shall have been loved;*  
 amāti erĭtis, or fuerĭtis, *you will have been loved;*  
 amāti ěrint, or fuěrint, *they will have been loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I may or can love.*

1. ěm-em, *I may or can love;*
2. ěm-es, *thou mayst love;*
3. ěm-et, *he may love.*

## PLURAL.

1. am-ěmus, *we may love;*
2. am-ětis, *you may love;*
3. ěm-ent, *they may love.*

## SINGULAR.

*I may or can be loved.*

- ěm-er, *I may be loved;*  
 am-ěris, or re, *thou mayst be loved;*  
 am-ětur, *he may be loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-ěmur, *we may be loved;*  
 am-emĭni, *you may be loved;*  
 am-entur, *they may be loved.*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

1. am-ārem, *I might love;*
2. am-āres, *thou mightst love;*
3. am-āret, *he might love.*

## PLURAL.

1. am-arěmus, *we might love,*
2. am-arětis, *you might love;*
3. am-ārent, *they might love.*

## SINGULAR.

*I might, could, would, or should be loved.*

- am-ārer, *I might be loved;*  
 am-arěris, or re, *thou mightst be loved;*  
 am-arětur, *he might be loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-arěmur, *we might be loved;*  
 am-aremĭni, *you might be loved;*  
 am-arentur, *they might be loved.*

## PERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I may have loved.*

1. amav-ērīm, *I may have loved;*
2. amav-ērīs, *thou mayst have loved;*
3. amav-ērīt, *he may have loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. amav-erīmus, *we may have loved;*
2. amav-erītis, *you may have loved;*
3. amav-erint, *they may have loved.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## SINGULAR.

*I may have been loved.*

- amātus sim, or fuērīm, *I may have been loved;*  
 amātus sis, or fuērīs, *thou mayst have been loved;*  
 amātus sit, or fuērit, *he may have been loved.*

## PLURAL.

- amāti sīmus, or fuerīmus, *we may have been loved;*  
 amāti sītis, or fuerītis, *you may have been loved;*  
 amāti sint, or fuērint, *they may have been loved.*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

1. amav-issem, *I might have loved;*
2. amav-isses, *thou mightst have loved;*
3. amav-isset, *he might have loved.*

## PLURAL.

1. amav-issēmus, *we might have loved;*
2. amav-issētis, *you might have loved;*
3. amav-issent, *they might have loved.*

## SINGULAR.

*I might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

- amātus essem, or fuissem, *I might have been loved;*  
 amātus esses, or fuisses, *thou mightst have been loved;*  
 amātus esset, or fuisset, *he might have been loved.*

## PLURAL.

- amāti essēmus, or fuissēmus, *we might have been loved;*  
 amāti essētis, or fuissētis, *you might have been loved;*  
 amāti essent, or fuissent, *they might have been loved.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

*Love thou, or do thou love.*

2. ām-a, or -āto, *love thou;*
3. am-āto, *let him love.*

## PLURAL.

2. am-āte, or -atōte, *love ye;*
3. am-anto, *let them love.*

## SINGULAR.

*Be thou loved, or do thou be loved.*

- am-āre, or -ātor, *be thou loved;*  
 am-ātor. *let him be loved.*

## PLURAL.

- am-amīni, *be ye loved;*  
 am-antor, *let them be loved.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*To love.*

*Present*, am-āre, *to love*;  
*Perfect*, amav-isse, *to have loved*;  
*Future*, amat-ūrus esse, *to be about to love*;  
*F. Perf.*, amat-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*To be loved.*

*Pres.*, am-āri, *to be loved*;  
*Perf.*, amāt-us esse, or fuisse, *to have been loved*;  
*Fut.*, amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.*, ām-ans, *loving*;  
*Fut.*, amat-ūrus, *about to love, or going to love.*

*Perf.*, amāt-us, *loved, or being loved*;  
*Fut.*, am-andus, *to be loved, worthy or proper to be loved.*

## SUPINES.

*Former*, amāt-um, *to love.**Latter*, amāt-u, *to be loved.*

## GERUND.

*Genitive*, am-andi, *of loving*;  
*Dative*, am-ando, *to or for loving*;  
*Accusative*, am-andum, *loving*;  
*Ablative*, am-ando, *in, with, by loving.*

## SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF AMO.

FIRST ROOT, Am.		SECOND ROOT, Amav.	THIRD ROOT, Amat.
ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> , āmo,	āmor.	<i>Ind. Perfect</i> , amāvi,	amātus sum, etc.
<i>Ind. Imp.</i> amābam,	amābar.	<i>Ind. Pluperf.</i> , amavēram,	amātus eram, etc.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i> amābo,	amāboi	<i>Ind. F. Perf.</i> , amavēro,	amātus ēro, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> , āmem,	āmer.	<i>Subj. Perfect</i> , amavērim,	amātus sim, etc.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i> , amārem,	amārer.	<i>Subj. Pluperf.</i> , amavissem,	amātus essem, etc.
<i>Imperative</i> , āma,	amāre.	<i>Inf. Perfect</i> , amavisse,	amātus esse, etc.
<i>Inf. Pres.</i> , amāre,	amāri.		
<i>Part. Pres.</i> , ānans.	—	THIRD ROOT.	
<i>Part. Fut.</i> , —	amandus.	<i>Inf. Future</i> , amatūrus esse,	amātum iri.
<i>Gerund</i> , amandi.	—	<i>Part. Future</i> , amatūrus.	—
		<i>Part. Perfect</i> , —	amātus.
		<i>Supine</i> , —	<i>Former</i> , amātum. <i>Latter</i> , amātu.

## 217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i> , mon-eo,	} <i>to warn</i> ( <i>advise</i> ).
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> mon-ēre,	
<i>Perf. Ind.</i> , monu-i,	
<i>Supine</i> , monīt-um,	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i> , moneor,	} <i>to be warned</i> ( <i>advised</i> ).
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> , mon-ēri,	
<i>Perf. Par.</i> , monītus,	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I warn, do warn, or am warning.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1. mon-eo,
	2. mōn-es,
	3. mōn-et;
<i>Plural.</i>	1. mon-ēmus,
	2. mon-ētis,
	3. mōn-ent.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I am warned.*

mon-eor,
mon-ēris, or -ēre,
mon-ētur;
mon-ēmur,
mon-emīni,
mon-entur.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I warn, did warn, or was warning.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1. mon-ēbam,
	2. mon-ēbas,
	3. mon-ēbat;
<i>Plural.</i>	1. mon-ebāmus,
	2. mon-ebātis,
	3. mon-ēbant.

*I was warned.*

mon-ēbar,
mon-ebāris, or -ebāre,
mon-ebātur;
mon-ebāmur,
mon-ebamīni,
mon-ebantur.

## FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall or will warn.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1. mon-ēbo,
	2. mon-ēbis,
	3. mon-ēbit;
<i>Plural.</i>	1. mon-ebīmus,
	2. mon-ebītis,
	3. mon-ēbunt.

*I shall or will be warned.*

mon-ēbor,
mon-ebēris, or -ebēre,
mon-ebītur;
mon-ebīmur,
mon-ebimīni,
mon-ebuntur.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I warn, did warn, or have warned.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1. monu-i,
	2. monu-isti,
	3. monu-it;
<i>Plural.</i>	1. monu-īmus,
	2. monu-istis,
	3. monu-ērunt, or -ēre.

*I was or have been warned.*

monītus sum, or fui,
monītus es, or fuisti,
monītus est, or fuit;
monīti sūmus, or fuīmus,
monīti estis, or fuistis,
monīti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

*I had warned.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. monu-eram,
		2. monu-eras,
		3. monu-erat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. monu-erāmus.
		2. monu-erātis,
		3. monu-erant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*I had been warned.*

monitus eram, or fueram,
monitus eras, or fueras,
monitus erat, or fuerat;
moniti erāmus, or fuēramus,
moniti erātis, or fuerātis,
moniti erant, or fuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall have warned.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. monu-ero,
		2. monu-eris,
		3. monu-erit;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. monu-erimus,
		2. monu-eritis,
		3. monu-erint.

*I shall have been warned.*

monitus ero, or fuero,
monitus eris, or fuēris,
monitus erit, or fuērit;
moniti erimus, or fuerimus,
moniti eritis, or fueritis,
moniti erint, or fuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*I may or can warn.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. mon-eam,
		2. mon-eas,
		3. mon-eat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. mon-eāmus,
		2. mon-eātis,
		3. mon-eant.

*I may or can be warned.*

mon-ear,
mon-eāris, or -eāre,
mon-eātur;
mon-eāmur,
mon-eamini,
mon-eantur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I might, could, would, or should warn.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. mon-ērem,
		2. mon-ēres,
		3. mon-ēret;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. mon-erēmus,
		2. mon-erētis,
		3. mon-ērent.

*I might, could, would, or should be warned.*

mon-ērer,
mon-erēris, or -erēre,
mon-erētur;
mon-erēmur,
mon-eremini,
mon-erentur.

PERFECT TENSE.

*I may have warned.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. monu-erim,
		2. monu-eris,
		3. monu-erit;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. monu-erimus,
		2. monu-eritis,
		3. monu-erint.

*I may have been warned.*

monitus sim, or fuērim,
monitus sis, or fuēris,
monitus sit, or fuērit;
moniti sīmus, or fuerimus,
moniti sītis, or fueritis,
moniti sint, or fuērint.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should have warned.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. monu-issem,
		2. monu-isses,
		3. monu-isset;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. monu-issēmus,
		2. monu-issētis,
		3. monu-issent;

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should have been warned.*

monitus essem, or fuissem,
monitus esses, or fuisses,
monitus esset, or fuisset;
monīti essēmus, or fuissēmus,
monīti essētis, or fuissētis,
monīti essent, or fuissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Warn thou, or do thou warn.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	2. mon-ē, or -ēto,
		3. mon-ēto;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	2. mon-ēte, or -etōte,
		3. mon-ento.

*Be thou warned, or do thou be warned.*

mon-ēre, or -ētor,
mon-ētor;
mon-emīni,
mon-entor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*To warn.*

<i>Present,</i>	mon-ēre, to warn;
<i>Perfect,</i>	monu-isse, to have warned;
<i>Future,</i>	monit-ūrus esse, to be about to warn;
<i>F. Perf.,</i>	monit-ūrus fuisse, to have been about to warn.

*To be warned.*

<i>Present,</i>	mon-ēri, to be warned;
<i>Perfect,</i>	monit-us esse, or fuisse, to have been warned;
<i>Future,</i>	monit-um iri, to be about to be warned.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	mōn-ens, warning;
<i>Future,</i>	monit-ūrus, about to warn, or going to warn.

<i>Perfect,</i>	monit-us, warned, or being warned;
<i>Future,</i>	mon-endus, to be warned, worthy or proper to be warned.

## SUPINES.

<i>Former,</i>	monit-um, to warn.	<i>Latter,</i>	monit-u, to be warned.
----------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------------

## GERUND.

<i>Genitive,</i>	mon-endi,	<i>of warning;</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	mon-endo,	<i>to or for warning;</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	mon-endum,	<i>warning;</i>
<i>Ablative,</i>	mon-endo,	<i>in, with, by warning.</i>



## SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF MONEO.

FIRST ROOT, <i>Mon.</i>		SECOND ROOT, <i>Monu.</i>	THIRD ROOT, <i>Monit.</i>	
ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> , mōneo,	moneor.	<i>Ind. Perfect</i> , monui,	monitus sum, etc.	
<i>Ind. Imp.</i> , monēbam,	monēbar.	<i>Ind. Pluperf.</i> , monuēram,	monitus ēram, etc.	
<i>Ind. Fut.</i> , monēbo,	monēbor.	<i>Ind. F. Perf.</i> , monuēro,	monitus ēro, etc.	
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> , moneam,	monear.	<i>Subj. Perfect</i> , monuērim,	monitus sim, etc.	
<i>Subj. Imp.</i> , monērem,	monērer.	<i>Subj. Pluper.</i> , monuissem,	monitus essem, etc.	
<i>Imperative</i> , mōne,	monēre.	<i>Inf. Perfect</i> , monuisse,	monitus esse, etc.	
<i>Inf. Pres.</i> , monēre,	monēri.	THIRD ROOT.		
<i>Part. Pres.</i> , mōnens,	——			
<i>Part. Fut.</i> , ——	monendus.			
<i>Gerund</i> , monendi,	——			
		<i>Inf. Future</i> , monitūrus esse,	monitum iri.	
		<i>Part. Fut.</i> , monitūrus.	——	
		<i>Supine</i> , Former, monitum.	Latter, monitu.	

## 272. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i> ,	rĕg-o,	} to rule.
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> ,	reg-ĕre,	
<i>Perf. Ind.</i> ,	rex-i,	
<i>Supine</i> ,	rect-um,	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i> ,	rĕg-or,	} to be ruled.
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> ,	reg-i,	
<i>Perf. Part.</i> ,	rect-us,	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

I rule, do rule, or am ruling.

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. rĕg-o,
		2. rĕg-is,
		3. rĕg-it;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. reg-ĭmus,
		2. reg-ĭtis,
		3. rĕg-unt.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

I am ruled.

rĕg-or,
reg-ĕris, or -ĕre,
reg-ĭtur;
reg-ĭmur,
reg-imĭni,
reg-untur.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

I rule, did rule, or was ruling.

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. reg-ēbam,
		2. reg-ēbas,
		3. reg-ēbat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. reg-ebāmus,
		2. reg-ebātis,
		3. reg-ēbant.

I was ruled.

reg-ēbar,
reg-ebāris, or -ebāre,
reg-ebātur;
reg-ebāmur,
reg-ebamĭni,
rĕg-ebantur.

## FUTURE TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
<i>I shall or will rule.</i>		<i>He shall or will be ruled.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	1. rĕg-am,	reg-ar,	
	2. rĕg-ēs,	reg-ēris, or -ēre,	
	3. rĕg-ēt;	reg-ētur;	
<i>Plural.</i>	1. reg-ēmus,	reg-ēmur,	
	2. reg-ētis,	reg-emīni,	
	3. rĕg-ent.	reg-entur.	

## PERFECT TENSE.

<i>I ruled, did rule, or have ruled.</i>		<i>I was, or have been ruled.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	1. rex-i,	rectus sum, or fui,	
	2. rex-isti,	rectus ēs, or fuisti,	
	3. rex-it;	rectus est, or fuit;	
<i>Plural.</i>	1. rex-īmus,	recti sūmus, or fuīmus,	
	2. rex-istis,	recti estis, or fuistis,	
	3. rex-ērunt, or -ēre.	recti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre.	

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>I had ruled.</i>		<i>I had been ruled.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	1. rex-eram,	rectus eram, or fuëram,	
	2. rex-eras,	rectus eras, or fuëras,	
	3. rex-erat;	rectus erat, or fuërat;	
<i>Plural.</i>	1. rex-erāmus,	recti erāmus, or fuerāmus,	
	2. rex-erātis,	recti erātis, or fuerātis,	
	3. rex-erant.	recti erant, or fuërant.	

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>I shall have ruled.</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	1. rex-ĕro,	rectus ĕro, or fuĕro,	
	2. rex-ĕris,	rectus ĕris, or fuĕris,	
	3. rex-ĕrit;	rectus ĕrit, or fuĕrit;	
<i>Plural.</i>	1. rex-erīmus,	recti erīmus, or fuerīmus,	
	2. rex-erītis,	recti erītis, or fuerītis,	
	3. rex-erint.	recti ĕrint, or fuĕrint.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>I may or can rule.</i>		<i>I may or can be ruled.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	1. rĕg-am,	rĕg-ar,	
	2. rĕg-as,	reg-āris, or -āre,	
	3. rĕg-at;	reg-ātur;	
<i>Plural.</i>	1. reg-āmus,	reg-āmur,	
	2. reg-ātis,	reg-amīni,	
	3. rĕg-ant.	reg-antur.	

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	reg-ĕrem,
	2.	reg-ĕres,
	3.	reg-ĕret;
<i>Plural.</i>	1.	reg-erĕmus,
	2.	reg-erĕtis,
	3.	reg-ĕrent.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

reg-ĕrer,
reg-erĕris, or -erĕre,
reg-erĕtur;
reg-erĕmur,
reg-eremĭni,
reg-erentur.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I may have ruled.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	rex-ĕrim,
	2.	rex-ĕris,
	3.	rex-ĕrit;
<i>Plural.</i>	1.	rex-erĭmus,
	2.	rex-erĭtis,
	3.	rex-ĕrint.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectus sim, or fuĕrim,
rectus sis, or fuĕris,
rectus sit, or fuĕrit;
recti sĭmus, or fuerĭmus,
recti sitis, or fuerĭtis,
recti sint, or fuĕrint.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	rex-issem,
	2.	rex-isses,
	3.	rex-isset;
<i>Plural.</i>	1.	rex-issĕmus,
	2.	rex-issĕtis,
	3.	rex-issent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectus essem, or fuissēm,
rectus esses, or fuisses,
rectus esset, or fuisset;
recti essĕmus, or fuissĕmus,
recti essĕtis, or fuissĕtis,
recti essent, or fuissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Rule thou, or do thou rule.*

<i>Singular.</i>	2.	rĕg-e, or -ĭto,
	3.	reg-ĭto;
<i>Plural.</i>	2.	reg-ĭte, or -itōte,
	3.	reg-unto.

*Be thou ruled, or do thou be ruled.*

reg-ĕre, or -ĭtor,
reg-ĭtor;
reg-imĭni,
reg-untor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*To rule.*

<i>Present,</i>	reg-ĕre, to rule;
<i>Perfect,</i>	rex-isse, to have ruled;
<i>Future,</i>	rect-ūrus esse, to be about to rule;
<i>F. Perf.,</i>	rect-ūrus fuisse, to have been about to rule.

*To be ruled.*

<i>Present,</i>	rĕg-i, to be ruled;
<i>Perfect,</i>	rect-us esse, or fuisse, to have been ruled;
<i>Future,</i>	rect-um iri, to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Present, rēg-ens, ruling;**Future, rect-ūrus, about to rule.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Perfect, rect-us, ruled, or being ruled;**Future, reg-endus, to be ruled, worthy or proper to be ruled.*

## SUPINES.

*Former, rect-um, to rule.**Latter, rect-u, to be ruled.*

## GERUND.

*Genitive, regendi, of ruling;*  
*Dative, regendo, to or for ruling;*  
*Accusative, regendum, ruling;*  
*Ablative, regendo, in, with, by ruling.*

## SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF REGO.

FIRST ROOT, <i>Reg.</i>		SECOND ROOT, <i>Rex.</i>		THIRD ROOT, <i>Rect.</i>	
ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
<i>Ind. Pres.,</i> rēgo,	rēgor.	<i>Ind. Perfect,</i>	rexi,		rectus sum, etc.
<i>Ind. Imp.,</i> regēbam,	regēbar.	<i>Ind. Pluperf.,</i>	rexeram,		rectus eram, etc.
<i>Ind. Fut.,</i> rēgam,	rēgar.	<i>Ind. F. Perf.,</i>	rexero,		rectus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.,</i> rēgam,	rēgar.	<i>Subj. Perfect,</i>	rexerim,		rectus sim, etc.
<i>Subj. Imp.,</i> regērem,	regērer.	<i>Subj. Pluper.,</i>	rexissem,		rectus essem, etc.
<i>Imperative,</i> rēge,	regere.	<i>Inf. Perfect,</i>	rexisse,		rectus esse, etc.
<i>Inf. Pres.,</i> regere,	rēgi.				
<i>Part. Pres.,</i> rēgens.	—			THIRD ROOT.	
<i>Part. Fut.,</i> —	regendus.	<i>Inf. Future,</i>	rectūrus esse,		rectum iri.
<i>Gerund,</i> regendi.		<i>Part. Future,</i>	rectūrus.		—
		<i>Part. Perfect,</i>	—		rectus.
		<i>Supine,</i>	Former, rectum.		Latter, rectu.

## 273. FORM IN IO—"CAPIO."

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.,* cap-io, }  
*Pres. Infin.,* cap-ēre, } *to take.*  
*Perf. Indic.,* cēp-i,  
*Supine,* capt-um, }

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.,* cap-ior, }  
*Pres. Infin.,* cāp-i, } *to be taken.*  
*Perf. Part.,* capt-us, }

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I take, do take, or am taking.*

*Singular.* { 1. cāp-io,  
 { 2. cāp-is,  
 { 3. cāp-it;  
  
*Plural.* { 1. cap-īmus,  
 { 2. cap-ītis,  
 { 3. cap-iunt.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I am taken.*

cap-ior,  
 cap-ēris, or -ēre,  
 cap-ītur;  
  
 cap-īmur,  
 cap-imīni,  
 cap-iuntur.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I took, did take, or was taking.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cap-iēbam,
	2.	cap-iēbas,
	3.	cap-iēbat;
<i>Plural.</i>	1.	cap-iebāmus,
	2.	cap-iebātis,
	3.	cap-iēbant.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I was taken.*

cap-iēbar,
cap-iebāris, or -iebāre,
cap-iebātur;
cap-iebāmur,
cap-iebamini,
cap-iebantur.

## FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall or will take.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cap-iam,
	2.	cap-iēs,
	3.	cap-iēt;
<i>Plural.</i>	1.	cap-iēmus,
	2.	cap-iētis,
	3.	cap-ient.

*I shall or will be taken.*

cap-iar,
cap-ēris, or -ēre,
cap-iētur;
cap-iēmur,
cap-iemini,
cap-ientur.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I took, did take, or have taken.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cēp-i,
	2.	cep-isti,
	3.	cēp-it; etc.

*I was or have been taken.*

capt-us sum, or fui,
capt-us ēs, or fuisti,
capt-us est, or fuit; etc.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I had taken.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cep-eram,
	2.	cep-eras,
	3.	cep-erat; etc.

*I had been taken.*

capt-us eram, or fueram,
capt-us eras, or fueras,
capt-us erat, or fuerat; etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall or will have taken.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cep-ero,
	2.	cep-eris,
	3.	cep-erit; etc.

*I shall or will have been taken.*

capt-us ero, or fuero,
capt-us eris, or fueris,
capt-us erit, or fuerit; etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I may or can take.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cap-iam,
	2.	cap-ias,
	3.	cap-iat; etc.

*I may or can be taken.*

cap-iar,
cap-iāris, or -iāre,
cap-iātur; etc.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should take.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cap-ĕrem,
	2.	cap-ĕres,
	3.	cap-ĕret; etc.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should be taken.*

cap-ĕrer,
cap-erĕris, or -erĕre,
cap-eretur; etc.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I may have taken.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cep-ĕrim,
	2.	cep-ĕris,
	3.	cep-ĕrit; etc.

*I may have been taken.*

captus sim, or fuĕrim,
captus sis, or fuĕris,
captus sit, or fuĕrit; etc.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I might, could, would, or should have taken.*

<i>Singular.</i>	1.	cep-issem,
	2.	cep-isses,
	3.	cep-isset; etc.

*I might, could, would, or should have been taken.*

captus essem, or fuissem,
captus esses, or fuisses,
captus esset, or fuisset; etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Take thou, or do thou take.*

<i>Singular.</i>	2.	căp-e, or -ĭto,
	3.	cap-ĭto;

*Be thou taken, or do thou be taken.*

cap-ĕre, or -ĭtor,
cap-ĭtor;

<i>Plural.</i>	2.	cap-ĭte, or -itōte,
	3.	cap-iunto.

cap-imĭni,
cap-iuntor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*To take.*

<i>Present,</i>	cap-ĕre, to take;
<i>Perfect,</i>	cep-isse, to have taken;
<i>Future,</i>	capt-ŭrus esse, to be about to take;
<i>F. Perf.,</i>	capt-ŭrus fuisse, to have been about to take.

*To be taken.*

<i>Present,</i>	căp-i, to be taken;
<i>Perfect,</i>	capt-us esse, or fuisse, to have been taken;
<i>Future,</i>	capt-um iri, to be about to be taken.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present, cap-iens, taking;**Future, capt-ŭrus, about to take, or going to take.**Perfect, capt-us, taken, or being taken;**Future, cap-iendus, to be taken, worthy or proper to be taken.*SUPINES.—*Former, capt-um, to take. Latter, capt-u, to be taken.*GERUND.—*Cap-iendi; cap-iendo; cap-iendum; cap-iendo.*

274. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.,</i>	aud-io,	} to hear.
<i>Pres. Inf.,</i>	aud-īre,	
<i>Perf. Ind.,</i>	audīv-i,	
<i>Supine,</i>	audīt-um,	

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.,</i>	aud-ior,	} to be heard.
<i>Pres. Inf.,</i>	aud-īri,	
<i>Perf. Part.,</i>	audīt-us,	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

*I hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. aud-io,
		2. aud-is,
		3. aud-it;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. aud-īmus,
		2. aud-ītis,
		3. aud-iunt.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*I am heard.*

aud-ior,
aud-īris, or -īre,
aud-ītur;
aud-īmur,
aud-īmīni,
aud-iuntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I hear, did hear, or was hearing.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. aud-iēbam,
		2. aud-iēbas,
		3. aud-iēbat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. aud-iebāmus,
		2. aud-iebātis,
		3. aud-iēbant.

*I was heard.*

aud-iēbar,
aud-iebāris, or -iebāre,
aud-iebātur;
aud-iebāmur,
aud-iebamīni,
aud-iebantur.

FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall or will hear.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. aud-iam,
		2. aud-ies,
		3. aud-iet;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. aud-iēmus,
		2. aud-iētis,
		3. aud-ient.

*I shall or will be heard.*

aud-iar,
aud-iēris, or -iēre,
aud-iētur;
aud-iēmur,
aud-iemīni,
aud-ientur.

PERFECT TENSE.

*heard, did hear, or have heard.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. audīv-i,
		2. audiv-isti,
		3. audīv-it;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. audiv-īmus,
		2. audiv-istis,
		3. audiv-ērunt, or -ēre.

*I was or have been heard.*

audīt-us sum, or fui,
audīt-us es, or fuisti,
audīt-us est, or fuit;
audīti sūmus, or fuīmus,
audīti estis, or fuistis,
audīti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre.



## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I had heard.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. audiv-eram,
		2. audiv-eras,
		3. audiv-erat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. audiv-erāmus,
		2. audiv-erātis,
		3. audiv-erant.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I had been heard.*

audīt-us eram, or fuēram,
audīt-us ēras, or fuēras,
audīt-us ērat, or fuērat;
audīti erāmus, or fuerāmus,
audīti erātis, or fuerātis,
audīti erant, or fuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall or will have heard.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. audiv-ēro,
		2. audiv-ēris,
		3. audiv-erit;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. audiv-erīmus,
		2. audiv-erītis,
		3. audiv-erint.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

audīt-us ēro, or fuēro,
audīt-us ēris, or fuēris,
audīt-us erit, or fuērit;
audīti erīmus, or fuerīmus,
audīti erītis, or fuerītis,
audīti erint, or fuērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I may or can hear.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. aud-iam,
		2. aud-ias,
		3. aud-iat;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. aud-iāmus,
		2. aud-iātis,
		3. aud-iant.

*I may or can be heard.*

aud-iar,
aud-iāris, or -iāre.
aud-iātur;
aud-iāmur,
aud-iamīni,
aud-iantur.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. aud-īrem,
		2. aud-īres,
		3. aud-īret;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. aud-irēmus,
		2. aud-irētis,
		3. aud-īrent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

aud-īrer,
aud-irēris, or -irēre,
aud-irētur;
aud-irēmur,
aud-iremīni,
aud-irentur.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I may have heard.*

<i>Singular.</i>	{	1. audiv-ērim,
		2. audiv-ēris,
		3. audiv-erit;
<i>Plural.</i>	{	1. audiv-erīmus,
		2. audiv-erītis,
		3. audiv-erint.

*I may have been heard.*

audīt-us sim, or fuērim,
audīt-us sis, or fuēris,
audīt-us sit, or fuērit;
audīt-i simus, or fuerīmus,
audīt-i sitis, or fuerītis,
audīt-i sint, or fuērint.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

*Singular.* { 1. *audiv-issem,*  
2. *audiv-isses,*  
3. *audiv-isset;*

*Plural.* { 1. *audiv-issēmus,*  
2. *audiv-issētis,*  
3. *audiv-issent.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

*audīt-us essem, or fuissem,*  
*audīt-us esses, or fuisses,*  
*audīt-us esset, or fuisset;*

*audīt-i essēmus, or fuissēmus,*  
*audīt-i essētis, or fuissētis,*  
*audīt-i essent, or fuissent.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Hear thou, or do thou hear.*

*Singular.* { 2. *aud-i, or -īto,*  
3. *aud-īto;*

*Plural.* { 2. *aud-īte, or -ītote,*  
3. *aud-iunto.*

*Be thou heard, or do thou be heard.*

*aud-īre, or -ītor,*  
*aud-ītor;*

*aud-imīni,*  
*aud-iuntor.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*To hear.*

*Present, aud-īre, to hear;*

*Perfect, audiv-isse, to have heard;*

*Future, audit-ūrus esse, to be about to hear;*

*F. Perf., audit-ūrus fuisse, to have been about to hear.*

*To be heard.*

*Pres., aud-īri, to be heard;*

*Perf., audit-us esse, or fuisse, to have been heard;*

*Fut., audit-um iri, to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present, aud-iens, hearing;*

*Future, audit-ūrus, about to hear, or going to hear.*

*Perf., audīt-us, heard, or being heard;*

*Fut., aud-iendus, to be heard, worthy or proper to be heard.*

## SUPINES.

*Former, audit-um, to hear.*

*Latter, audīt-u, to be heard.*

## GERUND.

*Genitive, aud-iendi, of hearing;*

*Dative, aud-iendo, to or for hearing;*

*Accusative, aud-iendum, hearing;*

*Ablative, aud-iendo, in, with, by hearing.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF *AUDIO*.

FIRST ROOT, <i>Aud.</i>		SECOND ROOT, <i>Audi.</i>	THIRD ROOT, <i>Audit.</i>
ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> , audio,	audior.	<i>Ind. Perfect</i> , audiui,	auditus sum, etc.
<i>Ind. Imp.</i> , audiēbam,	audiēbar.	<i>Ind. Pluperf.</i> , audivēram,	auditus eram, etc.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i> , audiam,	audiar.	<i>Ind. F. Perf.</i> , audivēro,	auditus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> , audiam,	audiar.	<i>Subj. Perfect</i> , audivērim,	auditus sim, etc.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i> , audīrem,	audīrer.	<i>Subj. Pluper.</i> , audivissem,	auditus essem, etc.
<i>Imperative</i> , audi,	audire.	<i>Inf. Perfect</i> , audivisse,	auditus esse, etc.
<i>Inf. Pres.</i> , audire,	audiri.		
<i>Part. Pres.</i> , audiens.	—	THIRD ROOT.	
<i>Part. Fut.</i> , —	audiendus.	<i>Inf. Future</i> , auditūrus esse,	auditum iri.
<i>Gerund</i> , audiendi.	—	<i>Part. Future</i> , auditurus.	—
		<i>Supine</i> , Former, auditum.	Latter, auditu.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

275. How are deponent verbs formed and conjugated?

DEPONENT VERBS are formed and conjugated like the passive voice of regular verbs of the same conjugation, but they take their signification from the active voice. Thus,

*Miror*, to admire (dep., first conj.), like *āmor*. (270.)

*Polliceor*, to promise (dep., second conj.), like *moneōr*. (271.)

*Utor*, to use (dep., third conj.), like *rēgor*. (272.)

*Metior*, to measure (dep., fourth conj.), like *audior*. (274.)

## NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

276. How are neuter passive verbs formed and conjugated?

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS, according as their tenses are active or passive in form, are formed and conjugated like the active or passive voice of the same tenses of the conjugation to which they belong.

277. What tenses take the passive form?

The tenses of neuter passive verbs which take the passive form are the perfect and pluperfect, in both the indicative and subjunctive moods, also the future perfect and perfect infinitive. The neuter passive verb *audeo*, I dare, forms the tenses as follows:

*Ind. Perf.*, ausus sum, or fui,

*Subj. Pres.*, ausus sim, or fuērim,

*Ind. Plup.*, ausus eram, or fuēram,

*Subj. Plup.*, ausus essem, or fuissem,

*Fut. Perf.*, ausus ēro, or fuēro,

*Inf. Perf.*, ausus'esse, or fuisse.

278. Are there many verbs of this class?

There are only four neuter passive verbs; three of the second conjugation, and one of the third—namely,

<i>Second conj.</i> ,	<i>audeo,</i>	<i>audēre,</i>	<i>ausus,</i>	<i>to dare.</i>
<i>Second conj.</i> ,	<i>gaudeo,</i>	<i>gaudēre,</i>	<i>gavīsus,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Second conj.</i> ,	<i>soleo,</i>	<i>solēre,</i>	<i>solītus,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>
<i>Third conj.</i> ,	<i>fīdo,</i>	<i>fidēre,</i>	<i>fīsus,</i>	<i>to trust.</i>

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

279. What is the periphrastic conjugation?

The periphrastic conjugation in Latin is a combination of the *future participles* in *rus* and in *dus* with the verb *sum*. The former constitutes the periphrastic conjugation *active*, and the latter the periphrastic conjugation *passive*.

280. What is the signification of these conjugations?

The combination of the future in *rus* with *sum* implies an *immediate future*; as, *amatūrus sum*, I am about or going to love *immediately*, or *very soon*.

The combination of the future in *dus* with *sum* implies *worthiness or desert*; as, *amandus sum*, I am *worthy* to be, *deserve* to be, or *ought* to be loved.

281. Repeat the tenses of these two conjugations?

#### FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.				PASSIVE VOICE.	
<i>Present,</i>	<i>amatūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am</i>	} <i>about to love.</i>	<i>Pres.,</i>	<i>amatūrus sim,</i>
<i>Imper.,</i>	<i>amatūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was</i>		<i>Imp.,</i>	<i>amatūrus essem,</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>amatūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be</i>		<i>Perf.,</i>	<i>amatūrus fuërim,</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>amatūrus fui,</i>	<i>I have been</i>		<i>Plup.,</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisset.</i>
<i>Pluper.,</i>	<i>amatūrus fuëram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>			

*Infinitive.* { *Present,* *amatūrus esse,*  
*Perfect,* *amatūrus fuisse.*

#### SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

*Present,* *amandus sum,*  
*Imperfect,* *amandus eram,* } etc., like the first.  
*Future,* *amandus ero,*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

282. Which are the irregular verbs?

The IRREGULAR VERBS are commonly reckoned *six*; namely, *sum*, *vōlo*, *fěro*, *ědo*, *fīo*, *eo*, and their compounds.

283. Of what are *prosum* and *possum* compounded?

*Prōsum*, *to do good*, is compounded of *prō*, *for*, and *sum*, *I am*. *Possum*, *to be able*, is compounded of *pōtis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*, contracted into *possum*.

284. Of what are *nōlo* and *mālo* compounded?

*Nōlo*, *I am unwilling*, and *mālo*, *I am more willing*, are compounds of *vōlo*. The former is compounded of *non* and *vōlo*, contracted into *nōlo*, and the latter of *māgis* and *vōlo*, contracted into *mālo*.

285. Where and why does *prosum* insert *d*?

*Prōsum* inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*, for euphony, or easiness of pronunciation.

286. Proceed now to conjugate the irregular verbs *prōsum*, *possum*, etc.

PROSUM, PRODESSE, PROFUI, *to do good*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present</i> ,	<i>prōsum</i> ,	<i>prōdes</i> ,	<i>prōdest</i> ;	<i>prōsumus</i> ,	<i>prodestis</i> ,	<i>prōsunt</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i> ,	<i>prod-eram</i> ,	<i>-eras</i> ,	<i>-erat</i> ;	<i>-erāmus</i> ,	<i>-erātis</i> ,	<i>-erant</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>prod-ěro</i> ,	<i>-ěris</i> ,	<i>-ěrit</i> ;	<i>-erīmus</i> ,	<i>-erītis</i> ,	<i>-erunt</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> ,	<i>profu-i</i> ,	<i>-isti</i> ,	<i>-it</i> ;	<i>-īmus</i> ,	<i>-istis</i> ,	<i>-ērunt</i> , or <i>-ēre</i> .
<i>Pluper.</i> ,	<i>profu-eram</i> ,	<i>-eras</i> ,	<i>-erat</i> ;	<i>-erāmus</i> ,	<i>-erātis</i> ,	<i>-erant</i> .
<i>F. Perf.</i> ,	<i>profu-ěro</i> ,	<i>-ěris</i> ,	<i>-ěrit</i> ;	<i>-erīmus</i> ,	<i>-erītis</i> ,	<i>-erint</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present</i> ,	<i>prōsim</i> ,	<i>-sis</i> ,	<i>-sit</i> ;	<i>-sīmus</i> ,	<i>-sītis</i> ,	<i>-sint</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i> ,	<i>prod-essem</i> ,	<i>-esses</i> ,	<i>-esset</i> ;	<i>-essēmus</i> ,	<i>-essētis</i> ,	<i>-essent</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> ,	<i>profu-erim</i> ,	<i>-eris</i> ,	<i>-erit</i> ;	<i>-erīmus</i> ,	<i>-erītis</i> ,	<i>-erint</i> .
<i>Pluper.</i> ,	<i>profu-issem</i> ,	<i>-isses</i> ,	<i>-isset</i> ;	<i>-issēmus</i> ,	<i>-issētis</i> ,	<i>-issent</i> .

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i> {	2. prōdes, or prodesto,	<i>Plural.</i> {	2. prodeste, or prodestōte,
	3. prodesto.		3. prosunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	prodesse;	<i>Future,</i>	profutūrus esse;
<i>Perfect,</i>	profuisse;	<i>Future Perfect,</i>	profutūrus fuisset.

PARTICIPLE.—profutūrus.

287. POSSUM, POSSE, POTUI, *I am able, I can.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present,</i>	possum,	pōtes,	pōtest;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
<i>Imperf.,</i>	pot-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērānt.
<i>Future,</i>	pot-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērunt.
<i>Perfect,</i>	potu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-uīmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Pluper.,</i>	potu-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērānt.
<i>F. Perf.,</i>	potu-ero,	-ēris.	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present,</i>	pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
<i>Imperf.,</i>	pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
<i>Perfect,</i>	potu-erim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
<i>Pluper.,</i>	potu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD,

<i>Present,</i>	posse;	<i>Perfect,</i>	potuisse. ( <i>The rest wanting.</i> )
-----------------	--------	-----------------	--

288. EO, IRE, IVI, ITUM, *to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present,</i>	eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
<i>Imperf.,</i>	ībam,	ības,	ībat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
<i>Future,</i>	ībo,	ībis,	ībit;	ibīmus,	ibītis,	ibunt.
<i>Perfect,</i>	īvi,	ivistī,	ivit;	ivīmus,	ivistis,	{ ivērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Pluper.,</i>	iv-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērānt.
<i>F. Perf.,</i>	iv-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present</i> ,	eam,	eas, eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
<i>Imperf.</i> ,	irem,	īres, īret;	irēmus,	irētis,	īrent.
<i>Present</i> ,	iv-ērim,	-ēris, ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
<i>Pluper.</i> ,	iv-issem,	-isses, -isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Present</i> ,	ī, or īto,	īto;	īte, or itōte, eunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present</i> ,	īre;	<i>Future</i> ,	itūrus esse;
<i>Perfect</i> ,	ivisse;	<i>Future Perfect</i> ,	itūrus fuisse.

## PARTICIPLES.

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

<i>Present</i> ,	iens.	<i>Gen.</i> ,	euntis.	<i>Gen.</i> ,	eundi,	<i>Former</i> ,	itum;
<i>Future</i> ,	itūrus,	-ūra,	-ūrum.	<i>Dat.</i> ,	eundo, etc.	<i>Latter</i> ,	ītu.

289. VOLO, VELLE, VOLUI, *to will, to be willing.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present</i> ,	vōlo,	vis, vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	vōlunt.
<i>Imperf.</i> ,	vol-ēbam,	-ēbas, -ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Future</i> ,	vōl-am,	-es, -et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Perfect</i> ,	volu-i,	-isti, -it;	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Pluper.</i> ,	volu-ēram,	-ēras, -ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
<i>F. Perf.</i> ,	volu-ēro,	-ēris, -erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Present</i> ,	vēlim,	vēlis, vēlit;	velīmus,	velītis,	vēlint.
<i>Imperf.</i> ,	vellem,	velles, vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
<i>Perfect</i> ,	volu-ērim,	-ēris, -ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
<i>Pluper.</i> ,	volu-issem,	-isses, -isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Present*, velle;      *Perfect*, voluisse.

*Present*, vōlens.



290. NOLO, NOLLE, NOLUI, *to be unwilling.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Pres.</i> , nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;		nol-ūmus,	non-vultis,	nōlunt.
<i>Imp.</i> , nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;		-ebāmus,	ebātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Fut.</i> , nōl-am,	-es,	-et;		-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Perf.</i> , nōlu-i,	-isti,	-it;		-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i> , nōlu-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;		-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
<i>F. P.</i> , nōlu-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;		-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Pres.</i> , nōlim,	nōlis,	nōlit;		nolīmus,	nolītis,	nolint.
<i>Imp.</i> , nollem,	nolles,	nollet;		nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
<i>Perf.</i> , nolu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;		-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
<i>Plup.</i> , nolu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;		-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i> { 2. nōli, or nolīto,	<i>Plural.</i> { 2. nolīte, or nolitōte,
3. nolīto.	3. nolunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, nolle,  
*Perfect*, noluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

*Present*, nōlens.  
(*The rest wanting.*)

291. MALO, MALLE, MALUI, *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Pres.</i> , mālo,	māvis,	māvult;		malūmus,	mavultis,	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i> , mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;		-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Fut.</i> , māl-am,	-es,	-et;		-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Perf.</i> , malu-i,	-isti,	-it,		-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i> , malu-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;		-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
<i>F. P.</i> , mālu-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;		-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Pres.</i> , mālīm,	mālīs,	mālīt;		malīmus,	malītis,	mālint.
<i>Imp.</i> , malle,	malles,	mallet;		mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
<i>Perf.</i> , malu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;		-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
<i>Plup.</i> , malu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;		-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*Pres.*, malle; *Perf.*, maluisse. (*The rest not used.*)

## 292. FERÖ, to bring, carry, or suffer.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
<i>Pres. Indic.,</i>	fěro,	<i>Pres. Indic.,</i>	fěror,
<i>Pres. Infin.,</i>	ferre,	<i>Pres. Infin.,</i>	ferri,
<i>Perf. Indic.,</i>	tŭli,	<i>Perf. Part.,</i>	lätus
<i>Supine,</i>	lätum,	} to be brought.	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1. fěro, <i>I bring</i> ;	fěror, <i>I am brought</i> ;	
	2. fers, <i>thou bringest</i> ;	ferris, or -re, <i>thou art brought</i> ;	
	3. fert, <i>he brings</i> .	fertur, <i>he is brought</i> .	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. ferĭmus, <i>we bring</i> ;	ferĭmur, <i>we are brought</i> ;	
	2. fertis, <i>ye bring</i> ;	ferimĭni, <i>ye are brought</i> ;	
	3. fěrunt, <i>they bring</i> .	feruntur, <i>they are brought</i> .	
<i>Imp.,</i>	fer-ĕbam, -ĕbas, -ĕbat, etc.;	fer-ĕbar, -ĕbaris or -re, -ĕbätur, etc.	
<i>Fut.,</i>	fěr-am, -es, -et, etc.;	fěr-ar, -ĕris or -ĕre, -ĕtur, etc.	
<i>Perf.,</i>	tŭl-i, -isti, -it, etc.;	lätus sum or fui, etc.	
<i>Plup.,</i>	tŭl-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat, etc.;	lätus ĕram or fuĕram, etc.	
<i>F. P.,</i>	tŭl-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit, etc.;	lätus ĕro or fuĕro, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.,</i>	fěr-am, -as, -at, etc.;	fěr-ar, -āris or -āre, -ātur, etc.
<i>Imp.,</i>	fer-rem, -res, -ret, etc.;	fer-rer, -rĕris or -rĕre, -rĕtur, etc.
<i>Perf.,</i>	tŭl-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit, etc.;	lätus sim or fuĕrim, etc.
<i>Plup.,</i>	tul-issem, -isses, -isset, etc.;	lätus essem or fuisset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular,</i>	fěr or ferto,	ferto;	ferre or fertor,	fertor.
<i>Plural,</i>	ferte or fertöte,	ferunto;	ferimĭni,	feruntor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	ferre,	<i>Present,</i>	ferri,
<i>Perfect,</i>	tulisse,	<i>Perfect,</i>	lätus esse or fuisse,
<i>Future,</i>	latŭrus esse,	<i>Future,</i>	lätum iri.
<i>Fut. Perf.,</i>	latŭrus fuisse.		

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	ferens,	<i>Perfect,</i>	lätus, -a, -um,
<i>Future,</i>	latŭrus, -ŭra, -ŭrum.	<i>Future,</i>	ferendus, -a, -um.

## SUPINES.

*Former,* lätum; *Latler,* lätu.

## GERUNDS.

*Gen.,* ferendi; *Dat.,* ferendo, etc.

293. Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive?

*Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes its third root, *factus*. It is conjugated as follows:

*FIO, FIERI, FACTUS, to be made, done, or become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present</i> , <i>fio</i> ,	<i>fis</i>	<i>fīt</i> ;	<i>fīmus</i> ,	<i>fītis</i> ,	<i>fiunt</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i> , <i>fi-ēbam</i> ,	<i>-ēbas</i> ,	<i>-ēbat</i> ;	<i>-ebāmus</i> ,	<i>-ebātis</i> ,	<i>-ēbant</i> .
<i>Future</i> , <i>fi-am</i> ,	<i>-es</i> ,	<i>-et</i> ;	<i>-ēmus</i> ,	<i>-ētis</i> ,	<i>-ent</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> , <i>factus sum</i> or <i>fui</i> ,	<i>factus es</i> or <i>fuisti</i> , etc.				
<i>Pluper.</i> , <i>factus eram</i> or <i>fuēram</i> ,	<i>factus ēras</i> or <i>fuēras</i> , etc.				
<i>F. Perf.</i> , <i>factus ēro</i> or <i>fuēro</i> ,	<i>factus ēris</i> or <i>fuēris</i> , etc.				

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present</i> , <i>fiam</i> ,	<i>fias</i> ,	<i>fiat</i> ;	<i>fīamus</i> ,	<i>fīātis</i> ,	<i>fiant</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i> , <i>fi-ērem</i> ,	<i>-ēres</i> ,	<i>-ēret</i> ;	<i>-erēmus</i> ,	<i>-erētis</i> ,	<i>-erent</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> , <i>factus sim</i> or <i>fuērim</i> ,	<i>factus sis</i> or <i>fuēris</i> , etc.				
<i>Pluper.</i> , <i>factus essem</i> or <i>fuissem</i> ,	<i>factus esses</i> or <i>fuisisses</i> , etc.				

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular*, *fi* or *fīto*, *fīto*. *Plural*, *fīte* or *fītōte*, *fiunto*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present*, *fiēri*; *Perfect*, *factus esse* or *fuisse*; *Future*, *factum iri*.

PARTICIPLES.

SUPINE.

*Perfect*, *factus*, *-a*, *-um*. *Future*, *faciendus*, *-a*, *-um*. *factu*.

294. Is *ēdo*, to eat, altogether an irregular verb?

*EDO, to eat*, is a regular verb of the third conjugation, but it has an irregular form resembling *sum* in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive.

295. Conjugate the verb as far as these tenses are concerned.

*ĒDO, ĒDERE* or *ESSE, ĒDI, ĒSUM, to eat*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.*, *ēdo*, *ēdis* or *ēs*, *ēdit* or *est*; *edīmus*, *edītis* or *estis*, *edunt*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Imp.*, { *edērem*, *edēres*, *edēret*, *ederēmus*, *ederētis*, *edērent*.  
 { or *essem*, *esses*, *esset*; *essēmus*, *essētis*, *essent*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. *ēde* or *editō*, *editō*, *edīte* or *editōte*, } *edunto*.  
 3. *ēs* or *esto*, *esto*, *este* or *estōte*, }

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

296. What are defective verbs?

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those in which some of their parts are wanting.

297. What defective verbs are termed *præteritive*, and why?

*Odi*, I hate; *cæpi*, I begin; *memīni*, I remember, are called *præteritive verbs*, because they are used only in the *præterite* (perfect) tense, and the tenses derived from it.

298. What significations has *cæpi*?

*Cæpi* has a *present* as well as a *perfect* signification, and an *imperfect* as well as a *pluperfect* meaning, and also a *future* as well as a *future perfect* meaning; thus,

*Perfect*,        *cæpi*,        *I begin*, or *I have begun*;

*Pluperfect*,   *cæpĕram*, *I began*, or *I had begun*;

*Fut. Perfect*, *cæpĕro*,   *I shall begin*, or *I shall have begun*.

299. What significations have *odi* and *memīni*?

*Odi* and *memīni* have the meanings only of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; thus, *odi*, I hate; *odĕram*, I hated; *odĕro*, I shall or will hate.

## SYNOPSIS OF THE PRÆTERITIVE VERBS.

*Odi*,    *odĕram*,    *odĕro*,    *odĕrim*,    *odissem*,    *odisse*.

*Participles*,   *ōsus*,   *osūrus*.

*Cæpi*,    *cæpĕram*,    *cæpĕro*,    *cæpĕrim*,    *cæpisse*,    *cæpisse*.

*Participles*,   *cæptus*,   *cæptūrus*.

*Memīni*, *meminĕram*, *meminĕro*, *meminĕrim*, *meminissem*, *meminisse*.

*Imperative*,   *memento*,   *mementōte*.

300. How is the perfect *nōvi*, from *nosco*, used?

The perfect *nōvi*, from *nosco*, I know, is used *præteritively*, and, like *odi* and *memīni*, has the sense only of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*: I know, I have known, I shall know.

301. Repeat the

## SYNOPSIS OF NŌVI, WITH THE CONTRACTIONS.

*Nōvi*,    { *novĕram*,    }   *novĕro*;    { *novĕrim*,    *novissem*,    *novisse*,  
          { *nōram*,        }                { *nōrim*,        *nōssem*,        *nōsse*.

302. What is to be remarked as to *do*, to give, and *fāri*, to speak?

*Do* is not used in the first person passive, either in the indicative or subjunctive; that is, it has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fāri* is used chiefly by the poets, and principally in the third person singular *fātur*, the imperative *fare*, the participle *fātus*, the genitive and ablative gerund *fandī*, *fando*, and supine *fātu*.

303. What is the difference between *aio*, I say, and *inquam*, I say?

*Aio*, I say, means *I affirm*; *inquam*, I say, is used only in quotations, and is always interposed between some part of the quotation; as, "*Quæ nunc tellus*," *inquit*, "*quæ me æquora*," etc.

304. Conjugate *aio*, *inquam*, *fōrem*, etc.

1. AIO, I say, I affirm.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> ,	<i>aio</i> ,	<i>aīs</i> ,	<i>aīt</i> ;	—	—	<i>aiunt</i> .
<i>Ind. Imp.</i> ,	<i>ai-ēbam</i> ,	<i>-ēbas</i> ,	<i>-ēbat</i> ;	<i>-ebāmus</i> ,	<i>-ebātis</i> ,	<i>-ēbant</i> .
<i>Ind. Perf.</i> ,	—	<i>aīsti</i> ,	<i>aīt</i> .	—	—	—
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> ,	—	<i>aīas</i> ,	<i>aīat</i> ;	—	—	<i>aīant</i> .
<i>Imp. Pres.</i> ,	—	<i>aī</i> ,	—	—	—	—
<i>Part. Pres.</i> ,	<i>aiens</i> .					

2. INQUAM, I say.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> ,	<i>inquam</i> ,	<i>inquis</i> ,	<i>inquit</i> ;	<i>inquīmus</i> ,	<i>inquītis</i> ,	<i>inquiunt</i> .
<i>Ind. Imp.</i> ,	—	—	<i>inquiēbat</i> ;	—	—	<i>inquiēbant</i> .
<i>Ind. Fut.</i> ,	—	<i>inquies</i> ,	<i>inquiet</i> .	—	—	—
<i>Ind. Perf.</i> ,	—	<i>inquisti</i> ,	<i>inquit</i> .	—	—	—
<i>Imp. Pres.</i> ,	—	<i>inque</i> ,	<i>inquito</i> ;	—	<i>inquīte</i> ,	—
<i>Part. Pres.</i> ,	<i>inquiens</i> .					

3. FÖREM, I should be.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Subj. Imp.</i> ,	<i>fōrem</i> ,	<i>fōres</i> ,	<i>fōret</i> ;	—	—	<i>fōrent</i> .
<i>Inf. Fut.</i> ,	<i>fōre</i> , to be about to be, (same as <i>futūrum esse</i> .)					

4. AVE, hail.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
<i>Imp. Pres.</i> , ave or avēto;	avēte or avetōte.	<i>Inf. Pres.</i> , avēre.

5. SALVE, *hail*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i> , ———	salvēbis.	———
<i>Imp. Pres.</i> , salve or salvēto;		salvēte or salvetōte.
<i>Inf. Pres.</i> , salvēre.		

6. CEDO, *tell, give*.

<i>Imp. Pres.</i> , SINGULAR, cēdo;	PLURAL, cēdo or cedīte,	Contracted. cette.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------

7. QUÆSO, *I beseech*.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> , SINGULAR, quæso;	PLURAL, quæsūmus.
--------------------------------------	-------------------

305. For what are *ausim*, *faxim*, and *faxo* used?

*Ausim* is used for *ausērim*, from *audeo*, I dare; *faxim* and *faxo* for *fecērim* and *fecēro*, from *facio*.

306. For what are *sīs*, *sultis*, and *sōdes* used?

*Sīs*, *sultis*, and *sōdes* are contractions of the conjunction *si* and a verb; as, *sis* for *si vis*; *sultis* for *si vultis*; and *sōdes* for *si audes*, with the meaning, *I pray you*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

307. What are impersonal verbs?

IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular. They have no nominative, and are translated with the English pronoun *it* before them; as, *delectat*, it delights; *contingit*, it happens.

308. Repeat the synopsis of the impersonal verbs *delectat*, *dēcet*, *contingit*, and *evēnit*.

	FIRST CONJ.	SECOND CONJ.	THIRD CONJ.	FOURTH CONJ.
<i>Ind. Present</i> ,	delectat,	dēcet,	contingit,	evēnit,
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i> ,	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
<i>Ind. Future</i> ,	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
<i>Ind. Perfect</i> ,	delectāvit,	decuit,	contīgīt,	evēnit,
<i>Ind. Pluperf.</i> ,	delectavērat,	decuērat,	contigērat,	evenērat,
<i>Ind. F. Perf.</i> ,	delectavērit.	decuērit.	contigērit.	evenērit.
<i>Subj. Present</i> ,	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
<i>Subj. Imperf.</i> ,	delectāret,	decēret,	contingēret,	evenīret,
<i>Subj. Perfect</i> ,	delectavērit,	decuērit,	contigērit,	evēnērit,
<i>Subj. Pluper.</i> ,	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
<i>Inf. Present</i> ,	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenīre,
<i>Inf. Perfect</i> ,	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.



309. What should be noticed as to the verb *evēnit*?

In *evēnit* it should be noticed that the penult of the present is *short*, while that of the perfect is *long*; as, *evēnit*, *evēnit*. This affects the pronunciation, (see 25, 2d, 3d).

310. Is a verb, not impersonal in itself, ever used impersonally?

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, it is fought; *favētur*, it is favored; *curritur*, it is run; *venītur*, it is come.

311. How may impersonal verbs be applied to any person or number?

Impersonal verbs may be applied to any person or number by placing *after them* the personal pronouns in the case which the verb, used personally, governs.

312. Exemplify this in the use of *delectat* and *plācet*?

*Delectat*, as a personal verb, governs the accusative; therefore, impersonally, we say *delectat me, te, illum*, etc., it delights *me, thee, him*, etc.; or I delight, thou delightest, he delights, etc. *Plācet*, in the same way, governs the dative; therefore we say *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, etc., it pleases *me, thee, him*, etc., or I please, thou pleasest, he pleases, etc.

313. When intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, how may they be applied to any person or number?

Intransitive verbs used impersonally in the passive voice may be applied to any person or number by placing *after them* the personal pronouns in the ablative case, governed by the prepositions *a* or *ab* (*ab* when the pronoun begins with a vowel).

314. Illustrate this use in *pugnātur*.

*Pugnātur a me*, it is fought *by me*, or I fight.  
*Pugnātur a te*, it is fought *by thee*, or thou fightest.  
*Pugnātur ab illo*, it is fought *by him*, or he fights.  
*Pugnātur a nobis*, it is fought *by us*, or we fight.  
*Pugnātur a vobis*, it is fought *by you*, or you fight.  
*Pugnātur ab illis*, it is fought *by them*, or they fight.



And so on through the different tenses and moods: *pugnabatur a nobis, we fought, ventum est ab illis, they came, or have come.*

315. In what mood are impersonal verbs not used, and how is this mood supplied?

Impersonal verbs are not used in the imperative mood, but take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight.

316. How many strictly impersonal verbs do grammarians reckon, and to what conjugation do they belong?

Grammarians reckon only *ten* real impersonal verbs; they all belong to the second conjugation.

Enumerate the impersonal verbs, with their meaning.

Dēcet,	decuit, etc.,	<i>it becomes, etc.</i>
Lībet,	libuit, etc.,	<i>it pleases, etc.</i>
Līcet,	licuit, or licitum est, etc.,	<i>it is allowed, lawful, etc.</i>
Misēret,	misēruit, or miseritum est, etc.,	<i>it pities, etc.</i>
Oportet,	oportuit, etc.	<i>it behooves, etc.</i>
Pīget,	piguit, or pigitum est, etc.,	<i>it grieves, etc.</i>
Pōnītet,	pōnituit, etc.,	<i>it repents, etc.</i>
Pūdet,	puduit, or puditum est, etc.,	<i>it shames, etc.</i>
Tādet,	tāduit, or tæsum est, etc.,	<i>it wearies, etc.</i>
Līquet,	(no perfect),	<i>it appears.</i>

317. What particular class of words is included under impersonals?

Verbs which indicate the state of the weather, or express the operations of nature, are included under impersonals; as, *pluit, it rains; ningit, it snows; fulminat, it lightens; tōnat, it thunders, etc.*

## ADVERBS.

318. What is an adverb?

An ADVERB is a word used to modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; as, *bēne* dixit, he spoke *well*; *egrēgie* fidēlis, *remarkably* faithful; *valde* *bēne*, *very well*.

319. What are the principal classes into which adverbs may be divided?

Adverbs may be divided principally into adverbs of *time*, *place*, *manner*, *quantity*, and *motion*.

320. Mention some adverbs of time.

ADVERBS OF TIME: *nunc*, now; *nūper*, lately; *ōlim*, formerly; *semper*, always; *nunquam*, never; etc.

321. Mention some adverbs of place.

ADVERBS OF PLACE: *hic*, here; *ūbi*, where; *illic*, there; *fōris*, abroad; etc.

322. Mention some adverbs of manner.

ADVERBS OF MANNER: *bēne*, well; *māle*, ill; *ita*, *sic*, so; *grātis*, freely; etc.

323. Mention some adverbs of quantity.

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY: *multum*, much; *pārum*, little; *pēne*, almost; etc.

324. Mention some adverbs of motion.

ADVERBS OF MOTION: *eo*, thither; *inde*, thence; *quo*, whither; *illuc*, thither; etc.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

325. How are adverbs derived?

Adverbs are derived principally from adjectives, nouns, or participles.

326. What terminations do adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions take?

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions in *us*, change *us* into *e* or *ter*; as, *altus*, *alte*; *dūrus*, *dūre* or *durīter*. Adverbs from *er* either change *er* into *re* or add *e*; as, *æger*, *ægre*; *liber*, *libère*; *miser*, *misère*. Some from *us* take *īter* and *ītus*; as, *humānus*, *humanīter* or *humanītus*.

327. What generally is the termination of adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension?

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension add *īter* to the root; as, *acris*, *acrīter*; *fēlix*, *felicīter*; *turpis*, *turpīter*.

328. In what do adverbs derived from nouns generally end?

Adverbs derived from nouns generally end in *tim* or *ītus*; as, *grex*, a herd, *gregātīm*, in herds; *vir*, a man, *virītīm*, man by man; *radix*, a root, *radicītus*, by the roots.

329. What are the terminations of adverbs derived from participles?

Adverbs derived from participles end either in *te*, *ter*, or *tim*; as, *doctus*, *docte*; *āmans*, *amanter*; *raptus*, *raptīm*.

330. What cases of nouns, adjectives, and participles are sometimes used as adverbs?

The ablative singular of nouns, adjectives, and participles, and the accusative singular (by the poets, plural) neuter of adjectives, are sometimes used as adverbs; as, *mōdo*, *vulgo*; *cīto*, *falso*; *auspicāto*, *consulto*; *sōlum*, *sublīme*; *multa*, *tristia*.

331. How do you explain such adverbial forms as *quā*, *aliā*, *rectā*, *unā*?

*Quā*, *aliā*, *rectā*, *unā*, and the like, are adjectives in the ablative singular feminine, with the noun *viā* understood; as, *quā viā*, by which way; *aliā viā*, by another way; *rectā viā*, straight forward; *unā viā*, together.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

332. How are adverbs compared?

Adverbs are compared generally like the adjectives from which they are derived; the regular *comparative* ending in *ius*, and the *superlative* in *issime* or *errime*.

333. Compare the following adverbs.

Alte ( <i>highly</i> ),	altius,	altissime.
Fortiter ( <i>bravely</i> ),	fortius,	fortissime.
Tūto ( <i>safely</i> ),	tutius,	tutissime.
Acrīter ( <i>sharply</i> ),	acrius,	acerrime.
Libere ( <i>freely</i> ),	liberius,	liberrime.

Compare the following irregular adverbs.

Bēne ( <i>well</i> ),	melius,	optime.
Māle ( <i>badly</i> ),	pejus,	pessime.
Facile ( <i>easily</i> ),	facilius,	facillime.
Multum ( <i>much</i> ),	plus,	plurimum.
Pārum ( <i>little</i> ),	minus,	minime, or minimum.
Prope ( <i>near</i> ),	propius,	proxime.

## DEFECTIVE ADVERBS.

————	Māgis ( <i>more</i> ),	maxime.
————	Ocius ( <i>more swiftly</i> ),	ocissime.
————	Prius ( <i>sooner</i> ),	primo, or primum.
Merito ( <i>deservedly</i> ),	————	meritissime.
Noviter ( <i>newly</i> ),	————	novissime.
Nūper ( <i>lately</i> ),	————	nuperrime.
Sātis ( <i>enough</i> ),	satius.	————

Compare DIU and SÆPE.

Diu ( <i>long</i> ),	diutius,	diutissime.
Sæpe ( <i>often</i> ),	sæpius,	sæpissime.

## PREPOSITIONS.

334. What is a preposition?

A PREPOSITION is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

335. Why is a preposition so called, and from what is the word derived?

A preposition is so called because it is *placed before* the word which it governs. It is derived from *præ*, before, and *positus*, placed.

NOTE.—The poets sometimes place the prepositions after the case they govern.

336. What cases do prepositions govern?

*Twenty-eight* prepositions govern the accusative case, and *fifteen* govern the ablative.

337. Repeat (1) from *ad* to *cis*; (2) from *cis* to *juxta*; (3) from *juxta* to *ultra*, the

## PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

(1) <i>Ad</i> , <i>to</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>toward</i> .	<i>Inter</i> , <i>between</i> , <i>among</i> , <i>during</i> .
<i>Apud</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>near</i> , <i>with</i> .	<i>Intra</i> , <i>within</i> .
<i>Ante</i> , <i>before</i> (of time and place).	(3) <i>Juxta</i> , <i>near</i> , <i>beside</i> .
<i>Adversus</i> , } <i>against</i> , <i>toward</i> .	<i>Ob</i> , <i>for</i> , <i>on account of</i> .
<i>Adversum</i> , }	<i>Pōnes</i> , <i>in the power of</i> .
<i>Circa</i> , }	<i>Per</i> , <i>through</i> , <i>during</i> , <i>by</i> .
<i>Circum</i> , }	<i>Pōne</i> , <i>behind</i> .
<i>Circiter</i> , <i>about</i> (of time).	<i>Post</i> , <i>behind</i> , <i>after</i> , <i>since</i> .
(2) <i>Cis</i> , }	<i>Præter</i> , <i>besides</i> , <i>except</i> .
<i>Citra</i> , }	<i>Propter</i> , <i>near</i> , <i>on account of</i> .
<i>Contra</i> , <i>against</i> , <i>opposite</i> .	<i>Secundum</i> , <i>along</i> , <i>according to</i> .
<i>Erga</i> , <i>toward</i> .	<i>Supra</i> , <i>above</i> .
<i>Extra</i> , <i>without</i> , <i>beyond</i> .	<i>Trans</i> , <i>beyond</i> , <i>across</i> , <i>over</i> .
<i>Infra</i> , <i>beneath</i> .	<i>Ultra</i> , <i>beyond</i> .

338. Repeat the

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ABLATIVE CASE.

A, }  
Ab, } *from, by, after.*  
Abs, }

Absque, *without.*

Clam, *without the knowledge of.*

Cōram, *before, in presence of.*

Cum, *with.*

De, *concerning, of, over.*

E, }  
Ex, } *out of, from, after, by.*

Pālam, { *before, with the knowl-  
edge of.*

Præ, *before, in comparison with.*

Pro, *before, for, according to.*

Sine, *without.*

Tēnus, *as far as, up to.*

339. What is the difference in the use of *a*, *ab*, and *abs*?

*A* is used before *consonants*; *ab* before *vowels* and *h*, *f*, *r*, and sometimes *t*; *abs* before *t* and *q*.

340. What is the difference in the use of *e* and *ex*?

*Ex* is used before *vowels*; *e* or *ex* before *consonants*.

341. What prepositions govern sometimes the *accusative*, and sometimes the *ablative*?

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the *accusative* when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the *ablative*, *super* and *subter* either the *accusative* or *ablative*.

342. What is to be remarked with regard to *tēnus* and *clam*?

*Tēnus* is always put after its case, and sometimes governs a genitive; as, *crūrum tēnus*, up to the legs. *Clam* sometimes governs an accusative as well as an ablative; as, *clam patre* or *patrem*, unknown to his father.

343. When are prepositions used as adverbs?

Prepositions are used as adverbs when they are not followed by their case.

## INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

344. What are inseparable prepositions, and why are they so called?

The syllables *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are never found except in compound words.

345. What are the significations of these prepositions?

AM signifies *round*, or *about*; as, *ambio*, to *surround*.

DI or DIS, *asunder*, or *apart*; as, *divello*, to *pull asunder*.

RE, *back*, or *again*; as, *relëgo*, to *read again*.

SE, *apart*, or *aside*; as, *sepōno*, to *lay aside*.

CON, *together*; as, *concreasco*, to *grow together*.

346. Which two sometimes reverse the meaning of a word?

*Di* or *dis*, and *re*, sometimes reverse the meaning of a word; as, *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *claudio*, *I shut*; *reclūdo*, *I open*.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

347. What is a conjunction?

A CONJUNCTION is a word used to connect words or sentences.

348. What are some of the principal classes into which conjunctions may be divided?

Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following principal classes, namely:

1. COPULATIVES; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *que*, *etiam*, *quōque*.
2. DISJUNCTIVES; as, *aut*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *nēve*, *neu*.
3. CONCESSIVES; as, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *licet*, *quanquam*.
4. ADVERSATIVES; as, *at*, *atqui*, *autem*, *sed*, *vērūm*.
5. CAUSALS; as, *enim*, *etēnim*, *nam*, *quando*, *quīa*.
6. ILLATIVES; as, *ergo*, *idcirco*, *igitur*, *quāre*.
7. FINALS; as, *ne*, *quān*, *quo*, *quomīnus*, *ut*, *ūtī*.
8. CONDITIONALS; as, *si*, *sin*, *nīsī*, *dummōdo*.
9. SUSPENSIVES; as, *an*, *anne*, *annon*, *ne*, *necne*, *num*, *utrum*.

349. What is the difference between a copulative and a disjunctive conjunction?

A *copulative* conjunction connects things that may be considered *jointly*; a *disjunctive*, such as are to be considered *separately*.



350. What is the relation of concessives and adversatives to each other?

*Concessive* and *adversative* conjunctions are *opposed* to each other; the former *concede* or *grant* something as true; the latter *oppose* or *object* to it as such.

351. What does an illative conjunction express?

An *illative* conjunction expresses an *inference* that something is true, or ought to be done or said.

352. What do final conjunctions denote?

*Final* conjunctions denote the *end*, *purpose*, or *object* for which something is done or said.

353. What conjunctions are called enclitics, and why?

The conjunctions *que*, *ve* (and the interrogative particle *ne*), which are always annexed to a word, are called *enclitics*, because when placed after a long syllable they incline the accent to that syllable; as, *vi'rum*, *virum'que*; *am'bo*, *ambo've*; *pu'tas*, *putas'ne*?

## INTERJECTIONS.

254. What is an interjection?

An INTERJECTION is a word used in exclamations, to express some emotion of the mind; as, *oh!* *hei!* *heu!* *oh!* *ha!* *alas!*

355. What parts of speech are sometimes used as interjections?

Nouns and adjectives in the neuter gender are sometimes used as interjections; as, *pax!* peace! be still! *mālum!* the mischief! *infandum!* shame!

## SYNTAX.

---

356. What is syntax?

SYNTAX is that part of grammar which treats of the proper arrangement of words in a sentence.

### SENTENCES.

357. What is a sentence, and what is it sometimes called?

A SENTENCE is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *homo est mortalis*, man is mortal. A sentence is sometimes called a *proposition*.

358. How many kinds of sentences are there?

Sentences are either *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

359. What is a simple sentence?

A SIMPLE SENTENCE is one which contains only a single proposition; as, *vita est brevis*, life is short.

360. What is a compound sentence?

A COMPOUND SENTENCE is one which contains two or more independent propositions; as, *vita est brevis, et ars est longa*, life is short, and art is long.

361. What is a complex sentence?

A COMPLEX SENTENCE is one in which one (or more) of the propositions is dependent on another, which is called the leading sentence; as, *memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas*, the memory is weakened, if you do not exercise it.

362. Explain what you mean by an independent and what by a dependent proposition.

An *independent* proposition makes sense by itself; as, *Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper*, Phocion was perpetually poor.

A *dependent* proposition makes sense only in connection with the one on which it is dependent; as, *Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse posset*, Phocion was perpetually poor, whereas he might have been very rich. Here *cum ditissimus esse posset* depends for its meaning on the preceding clause, as without it we could not tell who *might have been very rich*.

363. What are the principal parts of a sentence?

The principal parts of a sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate*.

364. What is the subject, and what the predicate?

The *subject* of a sentence is that of which something is *affirmed*, and the *predicate* is that which *is affirmed* of the subject; as, *puer lūdit*, the boy plays. Here *puer* is the *subject*, and *lūdit* the *predicate*.

365. What is a grammatical subject, and what a logical?

A *grammatical subject* is a single word, either a noun, or a pronoun, or an infinitive. A *logical subject* is the grammatical subject with the words which modify its meaning; as, *conscientia bēne actæ vitæ est jucundissīma*, the consciousness of a well-spent life is very delightful. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical subject, and *conscientia bēne actæ vitæ* the logical.

366. What is a grammatical predicate, and what a logical?

A *grammatical predicate* is a single verb; a *logical predicate* is the verb together with the words which modify its meaning; as, *Viriāthus bellum contra Romānos excitāvit*, Viriathus excited a war against the Romans. Here *excitāvit* is the *grammatical predicate*, and *excitāvit bellum contra Romānos* the logical.

367. What is a compound subject?

A COMPOUND SUBJECT consists of two or more simple subjects belonging to the same predicate or verb; as, *lūna et stellæ fulgēbant*, the moon and stars were shining. Here *lūna et stellæ* is the *compound subject*.

368. What is a compound predicate?

A COMPOUND PREDICATE consists of two or more verbs having a single subject; as, *virtus laudātur et alget*, virtue is praised and starves. Here *laudātur et alget* is the *compound predicate*.

369. What further may be said of all subjects and predicates?

All subjects and predicates may be modified by other words, which are used to *explain, enlarge, restrict*, or otherwise *qualify* their meaning.

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

370. State briefly the general principles of syntax.

1. Every sentence must have a subject (*nominative*) and a predicate (*verb*), expressed or understood.

2. Every nominative must have its own verb, and every finite verb its own nominative, expressed or understood.

3. Every oblique case must be governed by some word in the sentence, expressed or understood.

4. Every infinitive (1) must be governed by some verb; (2) have an accusative subject before it; (3) or be used as a noun, either by itself or with other words, as the subject or object of a verb.

5. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle must have some noun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees in gender, number, and case.

6. Every relative must have some noun, pronoun, or other word, expressed or understood, to which it refers.

### GOVERNMENT OF THE OBLIQUE CASES.

371. How is the genitive case governed?

Every *genitive* must be governed by some noun, adjective, verb, or adverb, or be used to express the *place where* or *in which*, and sometimes *price*.

372. How is the dative case governed?

Every *dative* must be governed by some noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or interjection.

373. How is the accusative case governed?

Every *accusative* must be governed by some verb or preposition, or be put before an infinitive as its subject, or be used to express the *place whither* or *to which*, *time how long*, *measure*, or *distance*.

374. How is the vocative case governed?

Every *vocative* is governed by the interjections *O*, *heu*, or *proh*, or is used without an interjection to denote the person or thing addressed.

375. How is the ablative case governed?

Every *ablative* case is governed by a noun, adjective; verb, or preposition; is used after the comparative degree; as the case absolute; to express *time when* or *how long*; the *place by* or *through* which; *price* and *measure*.

## CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

376. Into how many parts is syntax divided?

The parts of syntax are commonly reckoned two: *concord* or *agreement* and *government*.

377. What is concord?

CONCORD is the agreement of one word with another in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person*.

378. What is government?

GOVERNMENT is the power which one word has over another in determining its *mood*, *tense*, or *case*.

379. How many concords are there?

There are four concords or agreements; namely,

1. Of a substantive with a substantive.
2. Of an adjective with a substantive.
3. Of a relative with its antecedent.
4. Of a verb with its nominative or subject.

## CONCORD.

## A SUBSTANTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

380. What is the rule for the agreement of one substantive with another?

Substantives denoting the same person or thing are put in the same case; as,

<i>Cicĕro orĕtor,</i>	Cicero the orator;
<i>Urbs Athenæ,</i>	the city Athens;
<i>Nos consŭles,</i>	we consuls;
<i>Filius deliciæ matris,</i>	a son the darling of his mother.

381. What is this agreement called, and what is its use?

The agreement of one noun with another in case is called *apposition*, and the *second noun* is used to *explain* or *describe* the *first*.

382. Does this rule require that the apposition nouns should agree in gender and number, as well as in case?

The rule for apposition only requires that the nouns should agree in case. In the example *urbs Athenæ*, *Athenæ* is plural, while *urbs* is singular; and in *filius deliciæ*, *deliciæ* is plural and feminine, while *filius* is singular and masculine.

383. When two or more nouns in the singular have another noun in apposition with them, in what number is the latter put?

When two or more nouns have another noun in apposition with them, the latter is put in the plural; as,

<i>Cicĕro et Antonius consŭles,</i>	Cicero and Anthony, the consuls;
<i>Rōma et Carthĕgo urbes,</i>	the cities Rome and Carthage.

384. When the singular nouns are of different genders, what must be the gender of the apposition noun?

When the singular nouns are of different genders, the apposition noun is put in the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ptolemæus et Cleopatra*, *reges* (not *reginas*), Ptolemy and Cleopatra, the king and queen (*lit.* rulers).

## AGREEMENT OF AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

385. What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective with a substantive?

An adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir*, a good man;            *Bōni viri*, good men.  
*Casta femīna*, a chaste woman; *Castæ femīnæ*, chaste women.  
*Dulce pōmum*, a sweet apple; *Dulcia pōma*, sweet apples.

386. To what other classes of words does this rule apply?

Adjective pronouns and participles, like adjectives, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

387. When two or more nouns singular have an adjective belonging to them, in what number is the adjective put?

When two or more nouns have an adjective belonging to them, the adjective is put in the plural number; as, *Vir et puer terrīti lūpo*, a man and a boy frightened by a wolf.

388. What is the rule when the nouns are of different genders?

When the nouns are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine in preference to the feminine, and in the feminine in preference to the neuter; as, *Pāter et māter sunt mortui*, my father and mother are dead.

389. How if the nouns denote things without life?

If the nouns denote things without life, the adjective is generally put in the neuter plural; as, *Lābor et voluptas sunt dissimilia naturā*, labor and pleasure are unlike in nature.

390. When an infinitive mood or part of a sentence is used as a noun, in what gender is the adjective put?

When an infinitive mood or part of a sentence is used as a noun, the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as,

*Mentīri est turpe*, to lie is base;  
*Solem vidēre jucundum est*, to see the sun is pleasant.





A relative is governed, just like a noun of the same case, by some word in its own member of the sentence; as,

*Deus quem colimus*, God whom we worship; (445)

*Cujus munere vivimus*, by whose gift we live; (404)

*Cui nullus est similis*, to whom there is none like; (426)

*A quo omnia reguntur*, by whom all things are governed; (338.)

#### AGREEMENT OF THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE.

396. What is the general rule for the agreement of a verb with its nominative?

A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person; as,

*Ego lægo*, I read;

*Nos legimus*, we read.

*Tu scribis*, thou writest;

*Vos scribitis*, you write.

*Preceptor docet*, { the master }  
teaches; } *Preceptores docent*, { the masters }  
teach.

397. When two or more nouns singular form the nominative, in what number is the verb put?

When two or more nouns singular form the nominative to a verb, if they are *taken together*, the verb is put in the *plural*; but if *separately*, the verb is in the *singular*; as,

*Cato et Socrætes sapientes erant*, Cato and Socrates were wise;

*Si Socrætes aut Plàto diceret*, if Socrates or Plato should say.

398. What is the rule for a verb in the case of a noun of multitude?

If a collective noun expresses many as *one whole*, the verb is in the *singular*; if as *individuals*, the verb is in the *plural*; as,

*Populus* (whole) *me sibilat*, the people hiss me;

*Pars* (individuals) *epulis onerant mensas*, { part load the tables }  
with food.

399. When a noun in the nominative singular is connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, in what number is the verb put?

When a noun in the nominative singular is connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, the verb may be put

in the plural; as, *Rēmo cum frātre Quirīnus jūra dābunt*, Romulus with his brother Remus shall give laws.

400. What classes of verbs have a nominative both before and after them?

The substantive verb *sum*, neuter verbs of *motion*, and passive verbs of *naming*, *electing*, and *esteeming* or *reckoning*, have the same case after as before them; as,

<i>Ego sum discipūlus,</i>	I am a pupil;
<i>Tu vocāris Joannes,</i>	you are named John;
<i>Illa incēdit regina,</i>	she walks as a queen;
<i>Numa creātus est rex,</i>	Numa was elected king;
<i>Scio te esse discipūlum,</i>	I know that you are a pupil.

401. What is the nominative after these verbs called?

The nominative after these verbs is called the *predicate nominative*, and may be either a noun, an adjective, or a participle.

402. What verbs have no nominative?

Impersonal verbs have no nominative.

403. Are the personal pronouns, as nominatives, generally expressed.

The personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, as nominatives, are seldom expressed unless they are emphatic, as the termination of the verb marks the person with sufficient distinctness.

## GOVERNMENT OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

### THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY A NOUN.

404. Repeat the rule for the government of a genitive by a noun.

One substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter limits the signification of the former; as,

<i>Amor gloriæ,</i>	the love ( <i>of what?</i> ) of glory;
<i>Lex natūræ,</i>	the law ( <i>of what?</i> ) of nature.

405. In what two senses is the governed genitive used?

The governed genitive is used either in a *subjective* (active) or an *objective* (passive) sense.

406. Explain the meaning of this subjective or objective use.

The genitive is *subjective* when the action or feeling of the noun which it limits belongs to itself, and *objective* when it is the object of such action or feeling. Thus in *amor Dei* the genitive is both subjective and objective, as *amor Dei* may mean either God's love toward *us*, or our love toward *him*. But in *providentia Dei* the genitive can be subjective only, and in *tĭmor Dei* the genitive can be objective only, as in the former *providentia* can only be predicated of God, and in the latter *tĭmor* can only be predicated of *us*.

407. When the limiting noun has an adjective joined with it, in what one of two cases may it be put?

When the limiting or governed noun has an adjective of *praise*, *blame*, or *quality* joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative; the ablative is most common; as,

*Vir summæ prudentiæ*, or *summâ prudentiâ*, { a man of the  
highest wisdom;  
*Puer prœbæ indôlis*, or *prœbâ indôle*, a boy of good disposition.

408. What is this genitive or ablative called?

This genitive or ablative, with its adjective, is called the *genitive* or *ablative* of *character* or *description*.

#### GENITIVE GOVERNED BY AN ADJECTIVE USED AS A SUBSTANTIVE.

409. What case does an adjective without a substantive govern?

An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive (*i. e.*, used substantively) governs the genitive; as,

*Multum pecuniæ*, much money;  
*Quid rei est?* what is the matter?

410. Does this rule apply to adjectives in the plural as well as in the singular?

Adjectives in the neuter plural, as in the singular, without a substantive, govern the genitive; mostly, however, in the plural, and with a partitive signification; as,

*Opâca locôrum*, dark places; *Amâra curârum*, bitter cares.

## THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

411. What adjectives govern the genitive?

Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Avidus gloriæ,</i>	desirous of glory;
<i>Ignārus fraudis,</i>	ignorant of fraud;
<i>Mēmor beneficiōrum,</i>	mindful of favors.

412. What is a verbal adjective?

A *verbal* adjective is one derived from a verb; as, *avidus* from *aveo*, I desire; *ignārus* from *ignōro*, I am ignorant of; *mēmor* from *memini*, I remember.

413. Under this rule what verbals are included?

Under this rule are included verbals in *AX*, *NS*, and *TUS*. Also, adjectives signifying (1) *desire, disgust*; (2) *knowledge, ignorance*; (3) *memory, forgetfulness*; (4) *care, negligence*; (5) *fear, confidence*; (6) *guilt and innocence*.

414. What is the rule for partitives, comparatives, superlatives, etc.?

Partitives and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals govern the genitive plural; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophōrum,</i>	some one of the philosophers;
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	the elder of the brothers;
<i>Doctissimus Romanōrum,</i>	the most learned of the Romans;
<i>Quis nostrūm,</i>	which of us;
<i>Una musārum,</i>	one of the muses;
<i>Octāvus sapientum,</i>	the eighth of the wise men.

415. What do you mean by a partitive, or a word placed partitively?

An adjective is *partitive*, or a word is used *partitively*, when either signifies a *part* and *not the whole* of any number of persons or things.

416. Do partitives ever govern a genitive singular?

Partitive superlatives govern a *collective* noun in the genitive singular, and take the gender of the individuals of which the partitive noun is composed; as,

*Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, the bravest man of our state;  
*Maximus stirpis*, the greatest of his race;  
*Ultimos orbis Britannos*, { the Britons, the most distant  
 { people of the world.

417. What is the rule for adjectives of plenty and want?

Adjectives of *plenty* or *want* govern the genitive or ablative; as,

*Plēnus iræ* or *irâ*, full of anger;  
*Inops ratiōnis* or *ratiōne*, void of reason.

418. Mention some adjectives which govern the genitive only.

The following are some of the adjectives which govern the genitive only: *benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *irritus*, *liberâlis*, *munificus*, etc.

419. Mention some which govern the ablative only.

The following adjectives govern the ablative only: *beātus*, *mutilus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*.

#### THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

420. With what significations does *sum* govern the genitive?

*Sum*, when it signifies *property*, *characteristic*, or *duty*, governs the genitive of the person to whom the property, character, or duty pertains; as,

*Hæc dõmus est Cæsâris*, this house belongs to Cæsar;  
*Homini est errâre*, it is characteristic of man to err;  
*Militum est suo dūci parâre*, { it is the duty of soldiers to  
 { obey their general.

421. What should be remembered in connection with this rule?

It will be useful to remember that whenever a genitive precedes (as it usually does) or follows any part of the verb *sum*, it is to be translated by one or other of the meanings in the examples.



422. What is the rule for *misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satāgo*?

*Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satāgo* govern the genitive; as,

*Miserēre civium tuōrum*, pity your countrymen;

*Satāgit rērum suārum*, he is busy with his own affairs.

423. Mention some other verbs which, by a peculiar construction, govern the genitive.

1. Verbs denoting an affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive; as,

*Angor* (or) *discrucior anīmi*, I am distressed in mind;

*Lætor malōrum*, I rejoice at their misfortunes.

2. A few verbs, especially among the poets, and by a Greek construction, govern the genitive; as,

*Abstinēto irārum*, cease from your anger;

*Desīne querelārum*, cease from your complaints;

*Regnāvit populōrum*, he governed the nations.

424. What is the rule for *recordor*, *memīni*, etc.?

*Recordor*, *memīni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,

*Recordor lectiōnis* or *lectiōnem*, I remember the lesson;

*Obliviscor injuriæ* or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

## GOVERNMENT OF THE DATIVE CASE.

### THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

425. Do substantives ever govern the dative?

A substantive frequently governs the dative when this dative is strongly its object; as,

*Hostis virtutibus*, an enemy to virtue;

*Exitium pecōri*, a destruction to the flock;

*Obedientia legibus*, obedience to the laws.

A dative is also sometimes used for a genitive; as,

*Vēnit ei* (for *ejus*) *in mentem*, it came into his mind;

*Cui* (for *cujus*) *corpus porrigitur*, whose body extends.



## THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

426. What adjectives govern the dative?

Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *ease* or *difficulty*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, govern the dative; as,

*Utilis bello*,                      useful for war;  
*Terra facilis pecōri*, a land well adapted for cattle;  
*Similis patri*,                      like his father.

427. What other adjectives govern the dative?

Several adjectives compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis* and *dus*, govern the dative; as,

*Consciūs sibi recti*, conscious to himself of right; (*gov. also gen.*)  
*Flebilis nulli*,                      wept for by none;  
*Amandus* or *amabilis omnibus*, worthy to be loved by all.

428. Which of these govern sometimes the genitive and sometimes the dative?

*Affinis*, *similis*, *commūnis*, *par*, *proprius*, *finitimus*, and some others, govern sometimes the genitive and sometimes the dative.

429. What case does *īdem*, the same, govern?

*Idem*, the same, in imitation of the Greek, governs the dative; as,

*Jupīter īdem (est) omnibus*, Jupiter is the same to all.

## THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

430. What universal rule is there for the government of the dative by verbs?

Any verb may govern the dative of the *object* or *end* for which any thing is or is done; as,

*Finis vēnit imperio*, an end has come to the empire;  
*Anīmus rēdit hostibus*, courage returns to the enemy;  
*Tibi sēris, tibi mētis*, { you sow for yourself, you reap for  
   yourself.

## SPECIAL RULES.

431. What is the rule for *sum* and its compounds?

*Sum* and its compounds, except *possum*, govern the dative; as,

*Præfuit exercitui*, he commanded the army;  
*Debemus omnibus prodesse*, we ought to do good to all.

432. What is the rule for the possessor and the thing possessed?

*Est* is followed by a dative denoting the *possessor*, and the *thing possessed* is put in the nominative; as,

*Est mihi liber*, a book is to me, or I have a book;  
*Sunt mihi libri*, books are to me, or I have books;  
*Sunt regibus longæ mænus*, kings have long hands.

433. What is the rule for verbs compounded with *sātis*, *bēne*, *māle*?

Verbs compounded with *sātis*, *bēne*, and *māle* govern the dative; as,

*Benefacere reipublicæ*, to benefit the state;  
*Legibus satisfecit*, he satisfied the laws;  
*Maledicit utrique*, he abuses both.

434. What is the rule for verbs compounded with certain prepositions?

Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super*, govern the dative; as,

*Pecōri signum impressit*, he put a mark upon the cattle;  
*Annue cœptis*, favor our undertakings;

*Hibernis Labiēnum præposuit*, { he placed Labienus over  
the winter quarters.

435. Verbs with what particular significations govern the dative?

Verbs govern the dative which signify to *profit* or *hurt*; to *favor* or *assist*, and the contrary; to *command* and *obey*; to *serve* and *resist*; to *threaten* and *be angry*; to *trust* and *persuade*; as,

*Fortūna fāvet fortibus*, fortune favors the brave;  
*Paruit legibus*, he obeyed the laws;  
*Militibus persuasit*, he persuaded his soldiers.

436. What four verbs are exceptions to this rule?

*Jubeo*, *jūvo*, *lædo*, and *offendo* govern the accusative.

437. Mention some which vary their construction with a difference of signification, according as they govern a dative or accusative.

The following verbs govern a dative or accusative, with a difference of signification; namely,

*Consulo tibi*, I consult your interest; *te*, I ask your advice.

*Æmulator tibi*, I rival you; *te*, I imitate you.

*Timeo tibi*, I fear for your safety; *te*, I fear you.

*Studeo tibi*, I favor you. { *alicui*, I apply myself to something;  
   { *aliquid*, I desire something.

438. Is motion *to a place* ever expressed by the dative?

Motion *to* or *toward* a place is expressed by *ad* with the accusative. Poets sometimes express it by the dative.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

439. What case do impersonal verbs govern?

Impersonal verbs govern the dative; as,

*Expēdit reipublicæ*, it is profitable for the state;

*Nōbis non licet peccāre*, it is not allowed us to sin.

440. What impersonal verbs form the first exception to this rule?

*Rēfert* and *intērest* govern the genitive; as,

*Rēfert patris*, it concerns my father;

*Intērest omnium*, it is the interest of all.

441. Is this construction followed with the personal pronouns?

Instead of the personal pronouns in the genitive, *rēfert* and *intērest* take the possessives, *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, in the ablative; as,

*Non meā rēfert*, it does not concern me;

*Tuā maxime intērest*, it greatly concerns you.

442. What verbs form the second exception?

These five, *misēret*, *pœnitēt*, *pūdet*, *tædet*, and *pīget*, govern the accusative of the person exercising the feeling, with the genitive of the object on which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misēret me* (person) *tui* (object), I pity you;  
*Pœnitēt me* (person) *peccāti* (object), I repent of my sins;  
*Tædet me* (person) *vitæ* (object), I am weary of my life;  
*Pūdet me* (person) *culpæ* (object), I am ashamed of my fault.

443. What verbs form the third exception?

These four, *Dēcet*, *delectat*, *jūvat*, *opōrtet*, govern the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as,

*Non dēcet te rixāri*, it does not become you to scold;  
*Delectat me studēre*, I delight to study;  
*Nihil in bello opōrtet contemnī*, nothing in war ought to be despised.

#### VERBS WHICH GOVERN TWO DATIVES.

444. What verbs govern two datives?

The verbs *sum*, *do*, *dūco*, *verto*, *tribuo*, *habeo*, and some others, govern two datives, one of the person to whom, and the other of the object or end for which; as,

*Est mihi voluptāti*, it is (or it brings) a pleasure to me;  
*Hoc mīsīt mihi munēri*, he sent this to me as a present;  
*Ducitur honōri tibi*, it is reckoned an honor to you.

#### ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

445. What verbs govern the accusative case?

A transitive verb governs its object in the accusative case; as,  
*Ama Deum*, love God; *Reverēre parentes*, reverence your parents.

446. Do intransitive verbs ever govern an accusative case?

Some intransitive verbs govern an accusative case of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Pugnāre pugnam*, to fight a battle;  
*Canēre cantum*, to sing a song;  
*Currēre cursum*, to run a race.

## GOVERNMENT OF THE VOCATIVE CASE.

447. How is the vocative governed?

The vocative is used to express the name of a person or thing addressed, or is governed by the interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, etc.; as,

*Catilinā!*                      Catiline, or O Catiline!  
*O formōse puer!*            O handsome boy!  
*Heu me misērum!*        ah, wretch that I am!

448. What do the interjections *en* and *ecce* govern?

*En* and *ecce* govern the nominative or accusative; as,

*En ego vester Ascānius!*    lo, I, your Ascanius!  
*Ecce duas āras!*                behold two altars!  
*Ecce hōmo, or homīnem!*    behold the man!

449. Does the vocative form any part of a proposition?

The vocative forms no part of a proposition; it serves only to show to whom the proposition is addressed.

## GOVERNMENT OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.

## THE ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

450. What nouns govern the ablative?

*Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, govern the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniā,*    there is need of money;  
*Nunc ūsus viribus,*    now there is need of strength.

451. Do *opus* and *usus* ever govern any other case?

*Opus* and *usus* sometimes, but rarely, govern the genitive case; as, *Argenti ōpus fuit*, there was need of money.

452. When *opus* is used as an adjective, what is the construction?

When *opus* is used as an indeclinable adjective it has no government, but agrees with its noun, like any other adjective; as, *Dux nobis ōpus est*, we need a leader or guide.

453. With what particular class of words are *opus* and *usus* often joined?

*Opus* and *usus* are often joined with the perfect participle, used substantively; as,

*Opus maturāto*,—*consulto*, there is need of haste,—consultation;  
*Usus facto*, there is need of action.

#### ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

454. What adjectives govern the ablative?

These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *frētus*; also the participles *nātus*, *sātus*, *ortus*, and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honōre</i> ,	worthy of honor;
<i>Contentus parvo</i> ,	content with little;
<i>Præditus virtūte</i> ,	endued with virtue;
<i>Captus oculis</i> ,	injured in his eyes (blind);
<i>Frētus viribus</i> ,	trusting to his strength;
<i>Ortus regibus</i> ,	descended from kings.

455. Do any of these adjectives ever govern any other case?

*Dignus* and *indignus* sometimes govern the genitive; as,

<i>Dignus memoriæ</i> ,	worthy of memory;
<i>Indignus avōrum</i> ,	unworthy of his ancestors.

#### ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

456. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, what are the two constructions?

The comparative degree governs the ablative when the conjunction *quam* (than) is omitted; as,

<i>Dulcior melle</i> ,	sweeter than honey;
<i>Præstantior auro</i> ,	more precious than gold;
<i>Nihil est virtūte formosius</i> , nothing is more beautiful than virtue.	

But when *quam* is used, the second noun is in the same case as the first, being simply connected with it by *quam* as a conjunction; as,



*Aurum gravius est quam argentum*, gold is heavier than silver;  
*Lupi ferociōres sunt quam cānes*, { wolves are more ferocious  
 { than dogs.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

457. What is the case absolute in Latin?

A substantive with a participle whose case depends on no other word is put in the ablative absolute; as,

*Sōle oriente, fugiunt tenēbræ*, { the sun rising, or when the sun  
 { rises, darkness flies away;

*Opĕre peracto, ludĕmus*, { our work being finished, or when our  
 { work is finished, we will play.

458. State the idiomatic ablative absolute with the participle omitted.

The verb *sum* having no present participle by which to translate the word “*being*,” two nouns, or a noun and pronoun or adjective, are put in the ablative absolute with the participle omitted; as,

*Natūrā dūce*, { nature *being* guide, or under the guidance  
 { of nature;

*Me suasōre*, I *being* adviser, or by my advice;

*Invitā Minervā*, { Minerva *being* unwilling, or in spite of  
 { Minerva.

459. In what particular case is this construction universal?

The omission of the participle is universal when the *time* and *name* of office are indicated; as,

*Manlio consŭle*, in the consulship of Manlius;

*Marco Messāla et Marco Pisōne consulibus*, { in the consulship  
 { of Marcus Messala  
 { and Marcus Piso.

460. For what is the ablative absolute principally used?

The ablative absolute is principally used to mark the *time* or *circumstances* of an event or action. (See examples already given.)



## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

461. In what case is the price of a thing expressed?

The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Constitit talento,*                      it cost a talent;

*Vendidit hic auro patriam,* this man sold his country for gold.

462. What adjectives form an exception to this rule?

The adjectives *tanti*, *quantī*, *plūris*, and *minōris* are put in the genitive; as,

*Quantī constitit,*                      how much cost it?

*Non vendo plūris quam cætēri,* { I do not sell for more  
than others.

## MEASURE OR DISTANCE.

463. How is measure or distance expressed?

*Measure* or *distance* is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Mūrus dēcem pēdes altus,*      a wall ten feet high;

*Urbs distat triginta millia,* or } the city is distant thirty miles;  
*triginta millibus passuum,* }

*Iter,* or *itinēre*, *unius diēi*,    one day's journey.

464. How is excess or deficiency in measure expressed?

*Excess* or *deficiency* in measure is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Sesquipēde longior,*      taller by a foot and a half;

*Nōvem pedibus mīnor,*    less by nine feet;

*Quo difficilius, eo præclarius,*    { the more difficult, the  
more glorious;

*Quanto doctior, tanto submissior,* { the more learned, the  
more humble.

465. In comparisons of this sort, how are the correlatives *eo* and *quo*, *tanto* and *quanto*, to be translated?

In comparisons of this sort, the correlatives *eo* and *quo*, *tanto* and *quanto*, should be translated by "*the*" emphatic, as in the last two examples.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS, &amp;c.

466. What case is used to express cause, manner, means, etc.?

The *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument* of an action are put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Palleo mētū*, I am pale for fear (cause);  
*Fecit suo mōre*, he did it after his own way (manner);  
*Auro ostrōque decōri*, adorned with gold and purple (means);  
*Cæsus est virgis*, he was beaten with rods (instrument).

467. Is this rule universal?

*Cause*, *manner*, and *means* are sometimes expressed in the accusative and sometimes in the ablative, governed by prepositions; as,

*Ob adulterium cæsi*, slain on account of adultery;  
*Defessus de via*, tired with the way.

468. When the agent is voluntary, or a person, what is the construction?

When the agent is *voluntary*, or a *person*, a preposition must be used; *ob*, *propter*, or *per* with the accusative, and *a* or *ab* with the ablative; as,

*Per te liberātus sum*, I have been liberated through you;  
*Propter vos decipi*, to be deceived on your account;  
*Clodius a Milōne interfectus est*, Clodius was killed by Milo.

## LIMITING EXPRESSIONS,—ABLATIVE—ACCUSATIVE.

469. By what case are general statements restricted to some particular qualification or part?

General statements are limited to some particular qualification or part by the ablative, which is called the "*ablative of limitation*;" as,

*Pietāte filius*, a son (in what respect?) in affection;  
*Pedibus æger*, diseased (in what part?) in his feet.

470. Is the part affected ever expressed by any other case?

The *part affected* is often (especially by the poets) put in the accusative, which is called the "*synechdochical accusative*;" as,

*Nūdus membra,*                naked as to his limbs;  
*Os humerosque deo similis,* { like a god as to his face and  
     shoulders;  
*Sibīla colla tumentem,*      swelling as to his hissing neck.

471. What other case of limitation should be added?

A noun or pronoun denoting a person or thing in regard to whom or which something is said or done is put in the accusative; as,

*Nunc illos qui in urbe remansērunt,* { now with regard to those who  
have remained in the city ;  
*Quod reliquum est,* as to that which remains.

472. In what is this construction to be particularly noticed?

This construction is to be particularly noticed in speeches in which reference is made to something previously said or done. *Quod*, in these cases, begins the sentence and is followed by a subjunctive, which is translated as a participle; as,

Quod suâ victoriâ tam { as to their boasting so insolently  
insolenter gloriarentur, { of their victory;

*Quod improvise unum* { as to his having unexpectedly  
*pagum adortus esset,* { attacked one canton.

### THE ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

473. What kind of verbs govern the ablative?

Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

*Abundat divitiis,*    he abounds in riches;

*Căret omni culpă*, he has no fault.

474. What two verbs of this class are an exception?

*Egeo* and *indigeo* sometimes govern the genitive; as,

*Eget æris,* he needs money;

*Non tam artis indigent quam labōris,* { they do not need skill  
so much as industry.

475. What particular verbs govern the ablative?

*Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor* govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude,* he uses deceit;  
*Abutitur libris,* he abuses books.

476. What other verbs besides these govern the ablative?

*Gaudeo, creor, nascor, fīdo, vīvo, pasco, epūlor, nitor,* and some others govern the ablative; as,

*Elephantes amnibus gaudent,* elephants delight in rivers;  
*Silice non nāti sumus,* we are not born of a stone;  
*Animum pictūra pascit ināni,* { he feeds his mind on the  
 empty picture.

477. What case does *potior* often govern?

*Potior* often governs the genitive; as,

*Potiri urbis,* to get possession of the city;  
*Potiri rerum,* to possess the chief command.

But *potior, fungor, and vescor* also sometimes govern the accusative; as,

*Potiri urbem; Officia fungi,* to discharge duties;  
*Sacras lauros vescor,* I will feed on sacred laurels.

## VERBS WHICH GOVERN TWO CASES.

### ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

478. What verbs govern the accusative and genitive?

Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing,* with the accusative of a person, govern the genitive of the *crime, punishment, or subject of admonition;* as,

*Arguit me furti,* he accuses me of theft;  
*Meipsum inertiae condemno,* I condemn myself of laziness;  
*Illum homicidii absolvunt,* they acquit him of manslaughter;  
*Monet me officii,* he admonishes me of my duty.

479. Do any of these verbs vary their construction?

Instead of the genitive of *crime*, *punishment*, etc., some of these verbs take an accusative or ablative, with or without a preposition; as,

<i>Accusāre de negligentia,</i>	to accuse of negligence;
<i>Me peccāto solvo,</i>	I acquit myself of fault;
<i>Damnatus ad pœnam,</i>	condemned to punishment;
<i>Eos hoc moneo,</i>	I warn them of this.

480. What cases do verbs of valuing govern?

Verbs of *valuing*, together with the case which they usually govern, govern a genitive denoting the degree of estimation, such as *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*; as,

<i>Æstimo te magni,</i>	I value you much;
<i>Mihi stetit plūris,</i>	it cost me more;
<i>Est parvi,—tanti,</i>	it is of little value,—it is worth while.

481. Under this rule what particular genitives are to be reckoned?

Under this rule the genitives *assis*, *floci*, *pili*, *hujus*, and some others are to be reckoned; as,

<i>Floci te non facio,</i>	I do not care a straw for you;
<i>Non te hujus facio,</i>	{ I do not care that (a snap of my fingers) for you;
<i>Æqui bonique facio,</i>	I take this in good part.

#### ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

482. What verbs govern the accusative and dative?

Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away* govern the accusative of the person or thing compared, etc., and the dative of the person or thing to which it is compared, etc.; as,

<i>Compāro Virgilium Homēro,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer;
<i>Suum cuique tribuō,</i>	give every man his own;
<i>Narras fabulā surdo,</i>	you tell a story to a deaf man;
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	he rescued me from death.

483. In relation to the verbs which govern the accusative and dative, what are these cases called?

The accusative, or *thing done* or *said*, is called the *direct object*, and the person *to whom* it is done or said is called the *remote* or *indirect object*.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES.

484. What verbs govern two accusatives?

Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and *cēlo* (to conceal), govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing, etc.; as,

<i>Rōgo te nummos,</i>	I ask you for money;
<i>Posce deos veniam,</i>	ask favor of the gods;
<i>Docuit me grammaticam,</i>	he taught me grammar;
<i>Antigōnus iter omnes cēlat,</i>	{ Antigonus conceals his route from all.

485. Is this construction always followed?

Verbs of asking sometimes take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*, and verbs of teaching the ablative with *de*; as,

<i>Veniam ab ipso orēmus,</i>	let us beg favor of him;
<i>Istud volēbam ex te percontāri,</i>	{ I wished to inquire of you about that;
<i>De itinēre hostium senātum edōcet,</i>	{ he informs the senate about the march of the enemy.

## ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

486. What verbs govern the accusative and ablative?

Verbs of *binding*, *loading*, *filling*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

<i>Onērat nāves auro,</i>	he loads the ships with gold;
<i>Patēram mēro implet,</i>	she fills the goblet with wine;
<i>Terra se gramīne vestit,</i>	{ the earth clothes itself with grass;
<i>Impedimentis exuit hostem,</i>	{ he stripped the enemy of their baggage.

487. Instead of the ablative, what case do verbs of filling sometimes take?

Verbs of filling (in imitation of the Greek) sometimes take a genitive; as,

*Adolescentem suæ temeritātis implet,* { he fills the youth with  
his own rashness.

#### PASSIVE VERBS.

488. What is the construction of verbs in the passive which govern two cases in the active?

Verbs which govern two cases in the active voice retain the latter in the passive; as,

*Accūsor furti,* I am accused of theft; (478)

*Virgilius comparātur Homēro,* { Virgil is compared to  
Homer; (482)

*Doceor grammaticam,* I am taught grammar; (484)

*Nāvis onerātur auro,* the ship is loaded with gold. (486.)

489. In changing the construction from the active to the passive, which case becomes the subject of the sentence?

In changing the construction from the active to the passive, the direct object or accusative always becomes the subject or nominative, while the indirect remains unchanged, as in the examples just given.

490. With passive verbs, in what case is the agent or doer put?

Passive verbs, especially with the poets, take the *agent* or *doer* in the dative, instead of in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

*Vix audior ulli,* { I am scarcely heard by  
any one;

*Scribēris Vario,* { you shall be described by  
Varius;

*Nulla audīta mīhi sorōrum,* { none of your sisters have  
been heard of by me.



## PLACE,—NAMES OF TOWNS.

491. In what case is the name of a town put to express place where or in which?

The name of a town denoting the place *where* or *in which* is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Rōmæ,*                      he lived at Rome;  
*Mortuus est Milēti,*          he died at Miletus.

492. What is the exception to this rule?

If the name of the town *where* or *in which* is of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habītat Carthagīne,*          he dwells at Carthage;  
*Studuit Athēnis,*              he studied at Athens.

493. How is near or at a town expressed?

*At* or *near* a town is expressed by *ad* or *apud* with the accusative; as,

*Ad* or *apud Trojam,*          at or near Troy;  
*Ad* or *apud Pharsālum,*      at or near Pharsalia.

494. When the place *whither* or *to which* is denoted, in what case is the name of the town put?

The name of a town denoting the place *whither* or *to which* is put in the accusative; as,

*Vēnit Rōmam,*                  he came to Rome;  
*Profectus est Athēnas,*      he went to Athens.

495. In what case does the name of a town denote the place *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which*?

The name of a town *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as,

*Discessit Corintho,*          he departed from Corinth;  
*Laodiceā iter faciēbat,*      he went through Laodicea.

496. What general remark is to be made in regard to the foregoing rules ?

The names of towns expressing place in all of the foregoing cases are sometimes put after prepositions ; as,

*Where or in which :* *In Roma, in Philippis, in Rome, at Philippi.*

*Whither or to which :* *In Ephēsum abii,* I went to Ephesus.

*By or through :* *Per Thebas iter faciēbat,* he went through Thebes.

497. How are names of countries, provinces, etc., construed ?

The names of *countries, provinces, and other places, except large islands, are generally construed with prepositions ; sometimes without ; as,*

*Nātus in Italia,* born in Italy ;

*Abiit in Latium,* he is gone to Latium ;

*Vēnit Sardiniam,* he came to Sardinia ;

*Rediit ex Italia,* he has returned from Italy.

#### DOMUS AND RUS.

498. What is the construction of *dōmus* and *rus* ?

*Dōmus* and *rus* are construed like names of towns ; as,

*Mānet dōmi,* . he stays at home ; (491)

*Dōmum revertitur,* he returns home ; (494)

*Domo arcessitus sum,* I am called from home ; (495)

*Vivit rūre or rūri,* he lives in the country ; (491, 492)

*Abiit rus,* he is gone to the country ; (494)

*Rediit rūre,* he has returned from the country. (495.)

499. What three particular words come under this construction ?

*Hūmi, militiæ, and belli,* signifying place, are construed in the genitive like names of towns ; as,

*Dōmi et militiæ (or belli),* at home and abroad ;

*Jācet hūmi,* he lies upon the ground.

## TIME.

500. Repeat the rules for time when and time how long.

Time *when* is put in the ablative; as,

*Vēnit hōrā tertiā,* he came at the third hour;

*Die quinto decessit,* he died on the fifth day.

Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,* he stayed a few days;

*Sex mensibus abfuit,* he was absent six months.

501. What is the difference between the use of the accusative and ablative in this rule?

The accusative marks the *continuance* of time without *precision*, the ablative the *precise* period.

## CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

502. What is the construction of adverbs?

Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, to modify or limit their signification; as,

*Bēne scribit,* he writes well; *Fortiter pugnans,* fighting bravely;

*Sātis bēne,* well enough; *Egrege fidēlis,* remarkably faithful.

503. Do adverbs ever govern a case?

Some adverbs of *time*, *place*, and *quantity* govern the genitive; as,

*Pridie ejus diēi,* the day before that day;

*Ubique gentium,* every where;

*Sātis est verbōrum,* there is enough of words.

Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

*Omnium optime loquitur,* he speaks best of all;

*Convenienter naturæ,* agreeably to nature;

*Vēnit obviam ei,* he came to meet him;

*Proxime castris* or *castra,* next the camp.

## GOVERNMENT BY PREPOSITIONS.

504. What case do the prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, etc., govern? (516.)

The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, etc., govern the accusative; as,

<i>Ad patrem,</i>	to the father;
<i>Adversus hostes,</i>	against the enemy;
<i>Intra muros,</i>	within the walls.

505. What prepositions govern the ablative? (517.)

The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, etc., govern the ablative; as,

<i>A patre,</i>	from the father;
<i>Ab illo tempore,</i>	from that time;
<i>Cum exercitu,</i>	with the army.

506. What prepositions govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative?

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the accusative when *motion to a place* is signified; but when *motion* or *rest in a place* is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

<i>Vēnit in urbem,</i>	he came into the city;
<i>Sub iugum missus est,</i>	he was sent under the yoke;
<i>Jacet in terrā,</i>	he lies upon the ground;
<i>Bella sub mœnibus gerere,</i>	to wage war under the walls.

507. Give some examples (1) in which the preposition is omitted before its case; (2) in which the case is omitted after the preposition.

<i>Devenire locos</i> (sc. <i>ad</i> ),	they came to the place;
<i>Loco motus est</i> , (sc. <i>e</i> or <i>de</i> ),	{ he has been dislodged from his position;
<i>Ventum erat ad Vestæ</i> (sc. <i>ædem</i> ),	{ we had come to the tem- ple of Vesta.

508. What is the rule for prepositions in composition?

A preposition in composition often governs the same case as when it stands by itself; as,

<i>Adeāmus schōlam,</i> or	} let us go to school;
<i>Eāmus ad schōlam,</i>	
<i>Exeāmus urbe,</i> or	} let us go out of the city.
<i>Eāmus ex urbe,</i>	

509. When only does this rule take place?

This rule takes place only when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before its case without altering its sense, as in the examples just given.

## SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

### MOODS.

510. What is the principal difference in the use of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods?

The indicative mood is used principally in independent or leading propositions, and the subjunctive in dependent propositions or clauses.

511. Is the indicative mood never used in dependent clauses?

The indicative mood is used in dependent and conditional clauses, to denote what is supposed or admitted as a fact; as, *Si vāles, bēne est*, if you are in good health, it is well.

512. Is the subjunctive ever used in independent propositions?

The subjunctive mood is used independently,

1. As a softened imperative; as, *Eāmus*, let us go; *Moriāmur*, let us die.

2. In doubtful questions; as, *Quis dubitet?* who can doubt? *Quid aliud faceret?* what else could he do?

3. After some conditional clauses with *si*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, etc.; as, *Si hic sis, aliter sentias*, if you were here, you would think otherwise.

4. To express a wish, and after *utinam*; as, *Vellem*, I could wish; *Utinam sapēres*, I wish you were wise.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

513. What is the rule for the sequence or connection of tenses?

The rule for the sequence or connection of tenses is that the verb in the dependent clause must be of the same class with the verb in the leading clause; that is, a *primary* must follow a *primary*, and a *secondary* a *secondary*. (238.)

514. Explain this rule more particularly, and illustrate by examples.

A *present*, *future*, or *perfect definite* (with *have*) in the *indicative*, must be followed by a *present* in the *subjunctive* if the action is incomplete, and by a *perfect* if the action is complete; as,

- |                                   |                        |                                      |                       |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Present</i> , <i>video</i>  | } <i>quid agas</i> ,   | { I see<br>I have seen<br>I will see | } what you are doing; |
| <i>Perf. Def.</i> , <i>vidi</i>   |                        |                                      |                       |
| <i>Future</i> , <i>vidēbo</i>     |                        |                                      |                       |
| 2. <i>Present</i> , <i>video</i>  | } <i>quid egēris</i> , | { I see<br>I saw<br>I will see       | } what you have done. |
| <i>Perf. Indef.</i> , <i>vidi</i> |                        |                                      |                       |
| <i>Future</i> , <i>vidēbo</i>     |                        |                                      |                       |

An *imperfect*, *perfect definite* (without *have*), and *pluperfect* in the *indicative*, must be followed by an *imperfect* in the *subjunctive* if the action is incomplete, and by a *pluperfect* if it is complete; as,

- |                                      |                         |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>vidēbam</i> | } <i>quid agēres</i> ,  | { I saw<br>I saw<br>I had seen | } what you were doing; |
| <i>Perf. Def.</i> , <i>vidi</i>      |                         |                                |                        |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> , <i>vidēram</i>   |                         |                                |                        |
| 2. <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>vidēbam</i> | } <i>quid egisses</i> , | { I saw<br>I saw<br>I had seen | } what you had done.   |
| <i>Perf. Def.</i> , <i>vidi</i>      |                         |                                |                        |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> , <i>vidēram</i>   |                         |                                |                        |

515. Is this rule for the sequence of tenses invariable?

This rule for the sequence of tenses is not invariable, but is subject to considerable modifications arising from the *time* of the action which the verbs may be intended to express. An historical present, for example, though *present in form*, is *past in time*, and is, therefore, often followed by a past tense

in a dependent clause. These modifications are best learned by practice.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AFTER CONJUNCTIONS.

516. What conjunctions require the subjunctive mood?

The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, and *ne*, denoting *purpose* or *result*, also *licet*, *utinam*, *dum*, *dummōdo*, etc., in dependent clauses, require the subjunctive mood; as,

<i>Lēgo ut discam,</i>	I read that I may learn;
<i>Non ita ferreus sum</i>	} I am not so hard-hearted as not
<i>ut non movear,</i>	
	} to be moved;
<i>Veritas licet nullum</i>	} though truth obtain no defender;
<i>defensōrem obtineat,</i>	
<i>Utinam sapiēs,</i>	I wish you were wise.

517. When is *quo* used instead of *ut* to denote purpose?

*Quo* is used instead of *ut* to denote purpose when it is followed by a comparative; as,

<i>Pontem fēcit quo facilius</i>	} he made a bridge that he might
<i>transiret,</i>	
	} cross the more easily;
<i>Ager arātur quo meliores</i>	} a field is plowed in order that
<i>fētus edere possit,</i>	
	} it may produce better fruit.

518. When do *ut*, *cum*, and *dum* require the indicative?

*Ut*, *cum*, and *dum*, when they signify time merely, are followed by the indicative; as,

<i>Ut hæc audivit,</i>	when he heard these things;
<i>Cum te semper dilexi,</i>	since I have always loved you;
<i>Dum ea Romani parānt,</i>	{ whilst the Romans are making
	{ these preparations.

519. With what kind of verbs is *ut* with a subjunctive idiomatically used?

*Ut* with a subjunctive is used after impersonal verbs signifying *it happens*, *it remains*, *it follows*, etc.; as,

<i>Qui fit ut</i> , etc.?	how does it happen that, etc.?
<i>Restat ut</i> , etc.,	it remains that, etc.
<i>Sequitur ut</i> , etc.,	it follows that, etc.



520. What is the idiomatic use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing?

After verbs of fearing, *ut* is used *negatively* and *ne* *affirmatively*; as,

*Vereor ut* } I fear he will *not*; { *Vereor ne* } I fear he *will*.  
*Timeo ut* } { *Timeo ne* }

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVE.

521. When does the relative require the subjunctive?

The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* requires the subjunctive when it refers to an *indefinite*, *negative*, or *interrogative* word; as,

*Sunt qui dicant*, there are some who say;  
*Nemo est qui haud intelligat*, { there is no one who does  
 { not understand;  
*Quis est qui utilia fugiat?* { who is there that shuns  
 { what is useful?

522. How is the relative used to express purpose, object, or design?

A relative with the subjunctive, in a dependent clause, is often used to express purpose, object, or design; as,

*Mittunt legatos qui dicant*, they send ambassadors *to say*.  
*Equitatum præmittit qui videant*, { he sends forward horse-  
 { men *to see*.

523. What adjectives with a relative are followed by the subjunctive?

The adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, followed by a relative, take the subjunctive; as,

*Dignus qui ametur*, worthy to be loved;  
*Idoneus non est qui impetret*, { he is not worthy to obtain  
 { his request.

#### CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

524. What is the construction of the imperative mood?

The imperative mood is chiefly used in the second person to command, exhort, or entreat; as,

*Nosce teipsum*, know thyself;  
*De me cogitare desinite*, cease to think of me.

525. For what is it chiefly used in the third person?

The third person of the imperative expresses only command, and is chiefly used in the enactment of laws; as,

*Sălus popŭli suprēma lex esto*, { let the safety of the people  
be the supreme law.

526. What is the proper negative for the imperative?

The proper negative for the imperative is *ne* or *nēve* (not *non* or *nēque*); as,

*Tu ne cēde mālīs*, do not yield to misfortune;  
*Homīnem mortuum in urbe* { neither (thou shalt not) bury nor  
*ne sepelito nēve urito*, { burn a dead body in the city.

527. Instead of a simple imperative, what construction is sometimes used?

Instead of a simple imperative, sometimes *fac* and *cave* with a subjunctive, and *nōli* with an infinitive, are used; as,

*Fac erudias*, take care to instruct, or instruct;  
*Cāve existīmes*, beware of thinking, or do not think;  
*Nōli timēre*, do not fear.

#### CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

528. What is the construction of the infinitive?

The infinitive mood in its general construction may be regarded as a verbal noun, and as such may be used as the subject or object of a sentence, or be governed by a noun, adjective, or preposition; as,

*Mentīri est turpe*, (subject) to lie is base;  
*Da mihi fallere*, (object) grant me to deceive;  
*Tempus abire*, (noun) time to depart;  
*Audax omnia perpēti*, (adj.) resolute to endure all;  
*Nīl prāter plorāre*, (prep.) nothing but to weep.

529. After what kind of verbs is the infinitive used with an accusative subject?

After verbs *declarandi et sentiendi*, that is, verbs of saying,

hearing, feeling, knowing, believing, thinking, etc., the infinitive has an accusative before it as its subject; as,

*Dixit se intelligere*, he said that he understood;  
*Crēdunt se negligi*, they believe themselves to be neglected.

530. How are the accusative and infinitive to be translated in these cases?

When the infinitive has an accusative subject before it, the accusative must be translated by the nominative with the word “*that*” before it, and the infinitive as a personal verb, as in the examples just given.

531. On what does the time of the infinitive depend in such constructions?

The *time* of an infinitive, that is, the English tense by which it is to be translated, depends on the tense of the leading verb, or verb that precedes it.

State and exemplify this more fully.

I. A *present infinitive*, after a present or future, is present; after a past, is a past imperfect; as,

*Dicit se scribere*, he says that he writes, *or* is writing;  
*Dicet se scribere*, he will say that he writes, *or* is writing;  
*Dixit se scribere*, he said that he wrote, *or* was writing.

II. A *perfect infinitive*, after a present or future, is perfect; after a past, is pluperfect; as,

*Dicit se scripsisse*, he says that he wrote, *or* did write;  
*Dicet se scripsisse*, he will say that he wrote, *or* did write;  
*Dixit se scripsisse*, he said that he had written.

III. A *future infinitive*, after a present or future, is future; after a past, is a past potential; as,

*Dicit se scriptūrum esse*, he says that he will write;  
*Dicet se scriptūrum esse*, he will say that he will write;  
*Dixit se scriptūrum esse*, he said that he would write.

IV. A *future perfect infinitive*, after a present, future, or past, is translated by “*would have*,” as,

<i>Dicit</i>	} <i>se scriptūrum</i>	{	he says that he	} would have	
<i>Dicet</i>			he will say that he		written.
<i>Dixit</i>			he said that he		

#### HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

532. What is the historical infinitive, and how is it translated?

When a nominative is followed by an infinitive without an intervening verb the infinitive is called the *historical infinitive*, and is translated as if it were an imperfect indicative of the same verb, to which it is considered equivalent; as,

*Romāni festināre,* or *Romāni festinābant*;  
*Alius alium hortāri,* or *Alius alium hortābatur*.

533. By what verb is this infinitive supposed to be governed?

The historical infinitive is governed by *cæpit* or *cæpērunt* understood, according as the nominative is singular or plural.

#### ORATIO DIRECTA AND ORATIO OBLIQUA.

534. Explain what is meant by the *oratio directa* and the *oratio obliqua*.

When a writer or speaker expresses his own thoughts or those of another in the very words used, the construction is called the *oratio directa*, or direct address; but when he only reports the words as what the writer or speaker thought or said, the construction is changed into the *accusatiæ* and infinitive, and is called the *oratio obliqua*, or indirect address.

Thus, Cicero says (*oratio directa*), “*Cupio me esse clementem*,” “*Meam dōmum firmioribus præsidiis munīvi*.” A writer or speaker reporting these would say (*oratio obliqua*), *Cicero dixit se cupere esse clementem*; *Cicero dixit se suam dōmum firmioribus præsidiis munivisse*. In like manner,

(Directa), *Plāto in Italiā vēnit*, Plato came into Italy;

(Obliqua), { *Ferunt Platōnem in Italiā venisse*, } they say that Plato came into Italy;

- (Directa), { "*Actum est de exercitu,*" } he exclaimed, "It is all  
*clamāvit,* } over with the army;"
- (Obliqua), { *Actum esse de exercitu,* } he exclaimed that it was  
*clamāvit,* } all over with the army.

## PARTICIPLES.

535. What is the construction of participles?

Participles, besides agreeing, like adjectives, with their nouns in gender, number, and case, govern the case of their own verb; as,

*Anīmus se non videns,* the mind not seeing itself;  
*Hōmo fraude cārens,* a man wanting guile. (473.)

## GERUNDS.

536. How is the gerund, in its different cases, governed?

(1) The gerund in *di*, of the genitive cases, is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

*Tempus legendi,* time of reading;  
*Cupīdus discendi,* desirous of learning.

(2) The gerund in *do*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo,* paper useful for writing.

(3) The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *inter*, etc.; as,

*Ad intelligendum,* to understand;  
*Inter docendum,* in time of teaching.

(4) The gerund in *do*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *in*, or is used without a preposition as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,* { punishment frightens from  
 sinning;  
*Memoria excolendo augētur,* { the memory is improved by  
 exercising it;  
*Defessus sum ambulando,* I am weary with walking.

537. Is the gerund ever used in a passive sense?

The gerund, in a few passages, is used in a passive sense; namely,

*Spes restituendi*, (*Nep.*) the hope of being restored;  
*Causa censendi*, (*Cic.*) for the purpose of being enrolled;  
*Ad imperandum*, (*Sall.*) to receive orders;  
*Urit videndo*, (*Virg.*) she inflames by being seen.

#### GERUNDIVES.

538. Instead of the gerund with the accusative, what other construction is considered more elegant?

Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into gerundives in *dus*, which agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case.

539. In changing the gerund into the gerundive, what rule must be observed?

In changing the gerund into the gerundive, the governed accusative must be put in the case of the gerund, and the gerundive made to agree with it in gender, number, and case; as,

Gerund,	<i>Tempus petendi pācem,</i>	} time of seeking peace;
Gerundive,	<i>Tempus petendæ pācis,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>Ad petendum pācem,</i>	} to seeking peace;
Gerundive,	<i>Ad petendam pācem,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>A petendo pācem,</i>	} from seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>A petenda pāce,</i>	

540. Can this construction be reversed?

This construction may be reversed by changing the gerundive into the gerund, which must be put in the case of the noun, and the noun itself in the accusative case; as,

*Consilia urbis delendæ,* or *Consilia urbem delendi*;  
*Ad defendendam Romam,* or *Ad defendendum Romam*;  
*In diripiendis castris,* or *In diripiendo castra.*



541. What is the idiomatic use of the gerundive with *est*?

The gerundive with *est* implies *necessity*, or that something *must* be done, and takes the agent or doer in the dative; as,

<i>Legendum est mīhi,</i>	I must read;
<i>Scribendum est tibi,</i>	you must write;
<i>Moriendum est omnibus,</i>	all must die.

#### SUPINES.

542. What is the construction of the supine in *um*?

The supine in *um* is put after verbs of motion, to express the object of that motion; as,

<i>Abiit deambulātum,</i>	he has gone to walk;
<i>Venērunt questum,</i>	they came to complain.

543. Is the supine in *um* never put after any other verbs than those of motion?

The supine in *um* is sometimes put after other verbs than those of motion; as,

<i>Dedit filiam nuptum,</i>	he gave his daughter to be married;
<i>Revocātus defensum patrium,</i>	recalled to defend his country.

544. Do supines govern any case?

The supine in *um* governs the case of its own verb; as,

<i>Spectātum ludos veniunt,</i>	they come to see the games;
<i>Non servitum matribus ibo,</i>	{ I shall not go to serve the
	{ dames. (435.)

545. What is the construction of the supine in *u*?

The supine in *u* is put after adjectives signifying *pleasure* or *pain*, *ease* or *difficulty*, *worthiness* or *unworthiness*, etc.; as,

<i>Jacundum auditu,</i>	pleasant to hear;
<i>Facile dictu,</i>	easy to say;
<i>Honestum factu,</i>	honorable to do.

546. Is the supine in *u* ever used after nouns?

The supine in *u* is used after the nouns *fas*, *nēfas*, and *opus*; as,

<i>Fas est dictu,</i>	<i>Nēfas est dictu,</i>	<i>Opus est dictu,</i>
it is right to say;	it is wrong to say;	it is necessary to say.



## CONJUNCTIONS.

547. What is the construction of conjunctions?

The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, nēque, aut, vel*, and some others, connect like cases of nouns and like moods and tenses of verbs; also clauses in the same construction; as,

*Honōra patrem et matrem*, honor your father and mother;

*Nec lēgit nec scrībit*, he neither reads nor writes;

*Concīdunt venti, fugiuntque nūbes*, { the winds lull, and the  
clouds fly away.

548. Are the cases connected by conjunctions never unlike?

The cases connected by conjunctions are sometimes unlike, but the construction is the same; that is, the words so connected are in the same government; as,

*Mea et reipublicæ interest*, it concerns me and the republic;

*Constitit asse et plūris*, it cost a shilling and more.

549. How is this to be explained?

The first example is explained by reference to the rules 447, 448, and the second by rules 466, 467.

450. What is it useful to know with regard to conjunctions which go in pairs?

With regard to conjunctions which go in pairs, it is useful to know how they are to be translated. The following are some of the most common:

*Et—et,*  
*Et—que,*  
*Que—que,*  
*Cum—tum,*

} both—and.

*Aut—aut,*  
*Vel—vel,*

} either—or.

*Sive—sive,*

{ either—or;  
whether—or.

*Nec—nec,*  
*Nec—neque,*  
*Neque—neque,*

} neither—nor.

*Tum—tum,*

{ both—and;  
not only—but also;  
at one time—at another.

551. After what kind of words are *ac* and *atque* translated "as" and "than"?

After words expressing similarity or dissimilarity, *ac* and *atque* are translated "as" and "than"; as,

*Facis ac si me rôges,*      you do as if you should ask me;

*Me cõlet æque atque patronum suum,* {he shows me as much atten-  
tion as if I were his patron;

*Si aliter scribo ac sentio,* if I write otherwise than I think.

552. What is the general rule with regard to the mood to be used after conjunctions?

Conjunctions which do not imply doubt or contingency are followed by the indicative; those which imply doubt, contingency, or dependence, by the subjunctive.

## PROSODY.

---

1. What is prosody?

PROSODY is that part of grammar which treats of the quantity of syllables and the laws of versification, or making of verses.

2. What is meant by the quantity of a syllable?

The quantity of a syllable means the time which is taken up in pronouncing it.

3. As to their length, how are syllables divided?

Syllables are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

4. In regard to quantity, what is the difference between a *long* and a *short* syllable?

A *long* syllable takes twice as much time to pronounce it as a *short* syllable; thus, in *ămăre*, the second *a* is twice as long as the first. A long syllable, therefore, is equal two short ones, and two short ones are equal to one long.

5. What is meant by a syllable being *common*?

A syllable is said to be *common* which, in verse, is sometimes *long* and sometimes *short*; as *u* in *volūcris*, which may be pronounced in poetry *volūcris* or *volūcris*, as the metre requires.

6. How is the quantity of a syllable determined?

The quantity of a syllable is determined by certain rules, and when none of these applies to it, it is said to be *long* or *short* by *authority*; that is, the usage of the poets. Thus *i* in *lorica* is *long*, and *e* in *rēgo* is *short* by *authority*.

7. Is a final syllable ever long or short by authority?

A final syllable is *never long* or *short* by authority.

8. Into what two parts may the rules of prosody be divided?

The rules of prosody may be divided into *General Rules*, or rules which apply to all syllables, and *Special Rules*, or rules which apply to particular syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

### SHORT SYLLABLES.

9. What is the general rule for short syllables?

A vowel before another vowel, in Latin words, is short; as, *mĕus*, *alĭus*, *nĭhĭl* (*h* being considered only as a breathing); in Greek words it is varied, though mostly long.

10. What are the exceptions to this rule?

*Exc. 1.* The first syllable is *long* in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and in the penult of *aulāi*, *terrāi*, *Pompēi*, and like words. The first syllable of *ohe* and *Diana* is *common*.

*Exc. 2.* *E* is *long* before *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension; as, *diēi*, *speciēi*.

*Exc. 3.* *I* is *long* in the tenses of *fīo* when not followed by *r*; as, *fūunt*, *fĭebam*, *fĭeri*, *fĭerem*. *I* is *common* in genitives in *ius*; as, *illius* or *illĭus*: but in *alterius* it is always short, in *alĭus* (gen.) *long*.

### LONG SYLLABLES.

11. What are the general rules for long syllables?

(1) A vowel before two single consonants, or one double consonant (*j*, *x*, *z*) is *long by position*; as, *ārma*, *fāllo*, *mājor*, *āxis*, *gāza*. But the compounds of *jugum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bĭjūgus*, *quadrijūgus*.

12. What is the exception to this rule?

A vowel (naturally short and in the same syllable) before a mute when *l* or *r* follows is *common* in poetry, but in prose is *short*; as, *āgris* or *āgris*, *pharĕtra* or *pharĕtra*.

(2) A *diphthong* is always *long*; as, *aŭrum*, *Cāsar*. But *præ* in composition, when followed by a vowel, is short; as,

*præire*, *præustus*: also a diphthong in the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel is sometimes made short; as, *insulæ Ionio*, etc.

13. What is to be remarked as to *u* followed by a vowel?

In prosody *u* followed by a vowel is not regarded as a diphthong; as, *quætio*, *quæror*, *linguâ*.

(3) The prepositions *a*, *e*, *de*, *se*, *di*, and monosyllables generally are *long*. But *di* is *short* in the compounds *dirimo* and *disertus*. *Re* also in compounds is *short*, except in the impersonal verb *rêfert*.

(4) A contracted syllable is always *long*; as, *côgo* for *coago*, *nîl* for *nîhil*, *nôlo* for *non volo*, *scîlicet* for *scîre licet*, etc.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

14. What is the rule for perfects and supines of two syllables, and what are the exceptions?

PERFECTS and SUPINES of two syllables have the first *long*; as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*, *vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

*Exc. 1.* THE PERFECTS *bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, and *tūli*.

*Exc. 2.* THE SUPINES *cītum* from *cieo*, *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, and *stātum*.

15. What is the rule for perfects which double the first syllable, and what are the exceptions?

PERFECTS which double the first syllable have *both short*, unless the latter be long by position; as, *cēcīdi* from *cādo*, *didīci*, *pēpūli*, *tētēdi*, except *cēcīdi* from *cædo*, and *pepēdi*.

16. What is the rule for supines of more than two syllables, and what are the exceptions?

In SUPINES of more than two syllables *a*, *e*, *u* are *long* and *i* is *short* before *tum*; as, *amātum*, *delētum*, *indūtum*, *monītum*. But *i* is *long* in *divīsum*, also in supines in *ītum* from a perfect in *ivi*; as, *cupīvi*, *cupītum*; *audīvi*, *audītum*.

17. What is the rule for desiderative verbs in *urio*?

Desideratives in *urio* shorten *u* before *r*; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*: but other verbs in *urio* lengthen it; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*.

18. What is the rule for *u* in participles in *urus*?

PARTICIPLES in *urus* have *u* long in the penult; as, *amatūrus*, *monitūrus*, *doctūrus*, *auditūrus*.

19. What is the rule for *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* in the first part of a compound, and what are the exceptions?

In the first part of a compound *a* is long, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u* are short; as, *māto*, *trādo*; *nēfas*, *nēque*; *bīmaris*, *omnīpotens*; *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, *dūcenti*, *quadrūpes*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in words varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*: or when the words can be taken separately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrīfacio*.

Exc. 2. *I* in the masculine of *īdem* is long; in the neuter, short, *īdem*.

Exc. 3. *I* is long in *ubīque*, *ibīdem*; doubtful in *ubīvis*, *ubīcunque*.

Exc. 4. *I* in the compounds of *dies* is long; as, *bīduum*, *merīdies*: but in *quotīdies*, *quotīdianus*, *i* is sometimes short. (See 67.)

## INCREASE OF NOUNS.

20. When is a noun said to increase?

A noun is said to increase when it has a syllable or syllables more in any other case than in the nominative singular.

21. When is it said to increase in the plural?

A noun is said to increase in the plural when it has a syllable more than in the nominative plural.

22. What syllable or syllables are the increase?

The penult and antepenult syllables are the increase. The last syllable is never an increase. Thus in *rex*, *rēgis*, *re* in *rēgis* is the increase; in *īter*, *ītīnēris*, *tī* and *nē* are the increase; in *puer*, *puērī*, *puērōrum*, *ō* is the plural increase.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

23. What is the rule for the increase of the first declension?

The first declension has no increase in the singular. It increases only in the genitive plural, and in the dative and ablative plural of the few nouns which make *ābus*; in all these cases the *a* is *long*; as, *pennārum*, *deābus*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

24. What is the rule for the increase of the second declension?

The increase of the second declension is always *short*; as, *gēner*, *gēnēri*; *vīr*, *vīri*; *sātur*, *sāturi*. Except *Iber* and its compounds; as, *Ibēri*, *Celtibēri*.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

25. What is the rule for the increase of the third declension?

In the increase of the third declension, *a* and *o* are *long*; *e*, *i*, and *u*, *short*: as, *piētas*, *piētātis*; *hōnor*, *honōris*; *mulier*, *mulieris*; *lāpis*, *lapīdis*; *murmur*, *murmūris*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

26. What are the exceptions in *A*?

The exceptions in *a* are masculines in *al* and *ar*; as, *Hannibal*, *Hannibālis*; *Cæsar*, *Cæsāris*; *vas*, *vādīs*; *daps*, *dāpis*; and the increase of *mās*, *ānas*, *pār* and its compounds, *baccar*, *hēpar*, *jūbar*, *lār*, *nectar*, and *sāl*: Greek nouns which make the genitive in *adis*, or which, ending in *ā*, make *ātis*; as, *lampas*, *lampādis*; *poēma*, *poemātis*.

27. What are the exceptions in *E*?

*Hæres*, *locūples*, *merces*, *quies*, *vēr*, *seps*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*, *hælec*, *plebs*, *mansues*, *lēbes*, increase *long*. Also Greek nouns in *er* and *es*; as, *crāter*, *cratēris*; *magnes*, *magnētis*: but *aer* and *aether* increase *short*; as, *aēris*, *aethēris*.

28. What are the exceptions in *I*?

*Dīs*, *glīs*, *līs*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*; as, *Quīris*, *Quirītis*: nouns and adjectives in *ix* (including Greek nouns in *yx*), which make *icis* in the genitive; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; *felix*, *felicis*; also *vībex*:



*Gryps* and Greek nouns in *is* and *in*, which make *inis* in the genitive; as, *Salāmis*, *Salamīnis*; *delphin*, *delphīnis*.

29. What are the exceptions in *O*?

Neuters that make *oris* in the genitive; as, *corpus*, *corpōris*; *marmor*, *marmōris*: proper names; as, *Hector*, *Hectōris*: words in *obs* and *ops*; as, *scrobs*, *scrōbis*; *īnops*, *inōpis*. Shorten also *arbor*, *mēmor*, *compos*, *impos*, and *bōs*. *Ador* has *adōris* or *adōris*. Gentile nouns generally increase *short*; as, *Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*.

30. What are the exceptions in *U*?

Nouns in *us* and *ur*, which make *uris*, *utis*, and *udis* in the genitive; as, *mūs*, *mūris*; *virtus*, *virtūtis*; *pālus*, *palūdis*. But *Ligus* makes *Ligūris*; *pēcus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, *intercūtis*. *Fūr*, *lux*, *Pollux* have increase *long*; *furfur*, *murmur*, *sulphur*, *vultur*, *short*.

#### PLURAL INCREASE.

31. What is the rule for increase in the plural?

In the increase of the plural *a*, *e*, *o* are *long*, *i* and *u* *short*; as, *turbæ*, *turbārum*; *rēs*, *rērum*; *puēri*, *puerōrum*; *mōres*, *morīlus*; *lācus*, *lacūbus*.

#### INCREASE OF VERBS.

32. When is a verb said to increase?

A verb is said to increase when it has one or more syllables in any part of it than in the *second person singular* of the *present indicative active*.

33. What are the increase syllables?

The increase syllables are those preceding the last. The last is *never* an increase syllable.

34. May a verb have more than one increase syllable?

A verb in the active voice may have as many as *three* increase syllables; and in the passive *four*:

(*A-mas*), *a-ma<sup>1</sup>-mus*, *a-ma<sup>1</sup>-ba<sup>2</sup>-mus*, *a-ma<sup>1</sup>-ve<sup>2</sup>-ra<sup>3</sup>-mus*.

(*Au-dis*), *au-di<sup>1</sup>-tur*, *au-dim<sup>1</sup>-in<sup>2</sup>-i*, *au-di<sup>1</sup>-e<sup>2</sup>-ba<sup>3</sup>-tur*, *au-di<sup>1</sup>-e<sup>2</sup>-ba<sup>3</sup>-mīn<sup>4</sup>-i*.

35. What is the rule for the increase of verbs?

In the increase of verbs *a*, *e*, *o* are long, *i* and *u* short; as, *amāmus*, *docēmus*, *regimus*, *possūmus*.

NOTE.—The same rule as for the plural increase of nouns.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

36. What are the exceptions in *A*?

*A* is short in the first increase of *do* and its compounds of the first conjugation; as, *dātis*, *dābamus*, *circumdāre*.

37. What are the exceptions in *E*?

*E* before *r* in the third conjugation, and before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and in *beris* is short. But in *ērunt*, *ēre* of the perfect indicative active, *ēris*, *ēre* of the future indicative passive, and in *rēris*, *rēre* of the imperfect subjunctive passive, *e* is long.

NOTE.—*Erunt* of the perfect is sometimes shortened by the poets; as, *dedērunt*, *stetērunt*. (See 98.)

38. What are the exceptions in *O*?

There are no exceptions in *o*.

39. What are the exceptions in *I*?

*I* before *r* is long; also in the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *imus* of the perfect; as, *audīvi*, *audītus*, *audivimus*. *I* is also long in *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velimus*, *velītis*, and their compounds. *I* in *rimus*, *ritis*, of the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is sometimes lengthened by the poets.

40. What are the exceptions in *U*?

For exceptions in *u*, see *Special Rules*, 17 and 18.

#### PENULT SYLLABLES.

41. What is the rule for the penult of patronymics?

*Patronymics* in *ides* and *ades* shorten the penult, unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Priamīdes*, *Atlantiādes*; *Pelides*, *Tydidēs* (from *Peleus* and *Tydeus*). *Patronymics* and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ine*, and *one*, lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Memphitis*, *Nerīne*, *Acrisiōne*. In *Thebāis*, *Phocāis*, the penult is short, in *Nereus* it is common.

42. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, *imus*?

Adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, and *imus* for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *rusticus*, *lepīdus*, *legitīmus*.

43. What adjectives are exceptions to this rule?

Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *aprīcus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *antīquus*, *postīcus*, *infīdus* (from *fīdo*; but *perfīdus*—from *per* and *fīdes*), *bīmus*, *opīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus* and *matrīmus*.

44. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *alis*, *anus*, *arus*, etc.?

Adjectives in *alis*, *anus*, *arus*, *emus*, *ivus*, *orus*, and *osus* lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *ignārus*, *postrēmus*, *æstivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus* and *opipārus*.

45. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *ilis*?

Verbals in *ilis* shorten the penult, those derived from nouns lengthen it; as, *fertilis* (from *fēro*), *agilis* (from *āgo*), *civilis* (from *cīvis*), *hostilis* (from *hostis*).

46. What addition is to be made to this rule?

*Exilis*, *subtilis*, and the names of months, as *Aprīlis*, have the penult long; *humilis*, *parālis*, *similis*, and all adjectives in *atilis*, as, *versatilis*, *volatilis*, short.

47. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *inus*?

Adjectives in *inus*, derived from inanimate things, as trees, plants, stones, and from adverbs of time, shorten the penult; as, *fagīnus*, *crocīnus*, *adamantīnus*, *crastīnus*, *diutīnus*. Other adjectives lengthen it; as, *agnīnus*, *marīnus*.

48. What is the rule for diminutives?

Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, and *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum* shorten the penult; as, *urceōlus*, *filiōla*, *lectūlus*, *corcūlum*.

49. What is the rule for the penult of adverbs in *tim*?

Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affātīm*, *perpētīm*, *stātīm*.

50. What is the rule for desideratives in *urio*?

Desideratives in *urio* shorten *u* before *r*; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*,

*esurit*: but other verbs in *urio* lengthen it; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*, *ligūrīt*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, etc.

## FINAL SYLLABLES.

51. What is the rule for *A* final, and exceptions?

*A* in the end of words declined by cases is *short*; as, *mușă*, *templă*. Except the ablative of the first declension and Greek vocatives; as, *pennă*, *O Æneă*.

*A* in the end of words not declined by cases is *long*; as, *amă*, *frustră*, *ergă*.

*Exc.* *A* is *short* in *ejă*, *ită*, *quiă*, and *pută* (adverb): in numerals in *ginta*; as, *trigintă*: in *contră* and *ultră*, when prepositions, *a* is *short*; when adverbs, *long*: in *postea* it is *common*.

52. What are the rules for *E* final, and exceptions?

*E* in the end of words is *short*; as, *nătě*, *sedîlě*, *regěrě*: but in words of the first and fifth declensions and in Greek plurals *e* is *long*; as, *Anchisě*, *Calliopě*, *fidě*, *cetě*, *metě*.

*Monosyllables* in *e* are *long*; as, *mě*, *tě*, *sě*. But enclitics, *quě*, *ně*, *vě*, and syllabics, *ptě*, *cě*, *tě*, are *short*.

*E* in the second person singular of verbs of the second conjugation is *long*; as, *moně*, *docě*: but in *cave*, *vale*, and *vide* sometimes *short*.

*E* in adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions, and in superlatives, is *long*; as, *placidě*, *pulchrě*, *doctissimě*, *fortissimě*: but *beně*, *malě*, *magě*, *inferně*, and *superně* are *short*.

53. What is the rule for *I* final, and exceptions?

*I* in the end of words is *long*; as, *dominī*, *patrī*: but in Greek datives and vocatives *short*; as, *Palladī*, *Tethyī*, *Alexī*, *Parī*, *Troasī* or *Troasīn* (pl.).

In *mīhi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*, *nisi*, *quāsi*, *ūti*, and *cui* as a dissyllable, *i* is varied; in *sicutī*, *sicubī*, and *necubī*, always *short*.

54. What is the rule for *O* final, and exceptions?

*O* in the end of words is *common*; as, *amō*, *virgō*, *quandō*: but in the dative and ablative of the second declension it is *long*; as, *dominō*, *librō*.

*Exc. 1.* In Greek nouns and in monosyllables *o* is *long*; as, *Didō*, *Athō*, *Ō*, *dō*, *stō*. Also in *quō* and *eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis*, *quocūque*, *adeō*, *ideō*, *illō*, *idcirco*, *citrō*, *intrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*, *ergō*.

*Exc. 2.* *O* is *short* in *egō*, *sciō*, *cedō* (defective), *homō*, *citō*, *illicō*, *immō*, *duō*, *ambō*, *modō* and its compounds *quomodō*, *dunmodō*, *postmodō*. But some of these have *o* common.

55. What is the rule for *U* and *V* final?

*U* in the end of words is *long*; *y* is *short*; as, *vultū*, *molī*.

56. What is the rule for words ending in *B*, *D*, *L*, *R*, *T*?

Words ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *r*, *t* make the foregoing vowel *short*; as, *āb*, *illūd*, *consūl*, *patēr*, *capīt*.

57. What are the exceptions to this rule?

*Sāl*, *sōl*, *nīl* are *long*: also *aēr* and *aethēr*, and nouns in *er* that make *ērīs* in the genitive; as, *eratēr*, *eratēris*; *vēr*, *vērīs*. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *pār*, *cūr*, and *fūr* are *long*.

58. What is the rule for *M* in the end of words?

*M* with the foregoing vowel is cut off from the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel: otherwise the syllable is *short*; as, *militū octo* in prose, but *milit' octo* in poetry. (See 93.) Hence the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* in compounds are *short*; as, *cōmedo*, *circūmago*.

59. What is the rule for *C* and *N* in the end of words, and exceptions?

Vowels before *c* and *n* in the end of words are *long*; as, *āc*, *sīc*, *illūc*, *ēn*, *nōn*. *Nēc*, *fāc*, and *donēc* are *short*; *hic* and *hoc* (not the ablative) are *common*. Shorten also *forsān*, *forsitān*, *in*, *tamēn*, and *ēn'* by apostrophe; as, *vidēn'* (for *videsne*): and nouns in *en* which increase *short*; as, *carmēn*, *carmīnis*.

60. What is the rule for *AS*, *ES*, *OS* final?

*As*, *es*, *os* in the end of words are *long*; as, *pietās*, *quiēs*, *virōs*.

61. What are the exceptions in *AS*?

*Anās* and Greek nouns in *as* which make *ādis* in the genitive have *as* short; as, *lampās*, *lampādīs*.

62. What are the exceptions in *ES*?

Final *es* is *short* in nouns which increase *short* in the genitive; as, *hospēs*, *hospītis*; *limēs*, *limitis*: *long* in *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *pēs* and its compounds. *Es* from *sum* is *short*, from *ēdo* (to eat) *long*. The preposition *penēs* is *short*. *Es* is *short* in Greek neuters, and in the plural of Greek nouns of the third declension which do not make the genitive in *eos*; as, *cocoethēs*, *Troēs*.

63. What are the exceptions in *OS*?

*Os* is *short* in *compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (a bone), and in Greek nouns of the second declension, and in the genitive of those which make the genitive in *os*; as, *chaōs*, *epōs*, *Palladōs*.

64. What is the rule for *IS*, *US*, and *IS* final?

*Is*, *us*, and *ys* in the end of words are *short*; as, *turrīs*, *bonīs*, *Capjys*. But plural cases in *is* and *us* (except *bis*) are *long*; as, *bonīs*, *fructūs*; in *regibūs* and the like *us* is *short*.

65. Mention some further exceptions in *IS* and *US*.

*Exc. 1.* *Is* is *long* in nouns which increase *long* in *inīs*, *itīs*, or *entīs*; as, *Salamīs*, *Salamīnīs*; *Samnīs*, *Samnītīs*; *Simoīs*, *Simoēntīs*: in the second person singular of verbs whose second person plural has the penult *long* in *itīs*; as, *audīs*, *audītīs*; *fīs*, *fītīs*; *sīs*, *sītīs*: in *glīs*, *vīs*, *grātīs*, *forīs*, *i* is *long*.

*Exc. 2.* Monosyllables in *us* are *long*; as, *mūs*, *grūs*, *rūs*. *Us* is also *long* in nouns which make the genitive in *ūris*, *ūtīs*, *ūdis*, *untīs*, or *ōdis*; as *tellūs*, *-ūris*; *virtūs*, *-ūtīs*; *incūs*, *-ūdis*; *tripūs*, *-ōdis*. *Panthūs*, voc. *Panthū*.



## DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

66. What is the rule for derivative and compound words?

*Derivative* words follow the quantity of their primitives, and *compound* words the quantity of the words of which they are compounded.

67. Are there many exceptions to the rule for derivative words?

The exceptions to the rule for derivative words are numerous; they are best learned as they occur.

68. What is the general rule for the vowels in the first part of a compound?

In the first part of a compound *a*, if not a preposition, is *long*; *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*, *short*; as, *mālo*, *quāpropter*, *trādo*; *nēfas*, *valēdico*, *hujuscēmodi*; *omnipotens*, *trīceps*; *hōdie*, *quandōquidem*; *dūcenti*, *locūples*; *Polýdorüs*, *Eurýpylus*.

69. Give some exceptions to this rule?

*E* is *long* in *nēmo*, *nēquis*, *nēquando*, *nēquidquam*, and the like; also in *vēcors*, *vēsanus*, *vēneficus*, and compounds of *se* for *sex*; as, *sēdecim*, *sēstris*.

*I* is *long* in words varied by cases, or when the compounding words can be taken separately; as, *quīvis*, *quīdam*; *ludimagister*, *lucrīfacio*. *I* in the masculine of *īdem* is *long*; in the neuter *short*, *īdem*; it is also *long* in *ubique*, *ibidem*, but in *ubivis*, *ubicunque*, *doubtful*. In the compounds of *dies*, *i* is *long*; as, *bīduum*, *merīdies*, *prīdem*; but in *quotīdie*, *quotīdianus*, it is sometimes *short*.

*U* is *long* in *Jūpiter*, *jūdex*, *jūdicium*, and in compounds of *usus*; as, *usūcapio*.

70. What is the rule for *pro* in the first part of a compound?

The Greek *pro* is *short*; as, *prōpheta*, *prōlogus*: the Latin *pro* usually *long*.

71. Mention some words in which *pro* is short.

*Pro* is *short* in *prōcella*, *prōfanus*, *prōfari*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfestus*, *prōfecto*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōpero*, *prōtereus*.



72. In what words is *pro* doubtful?

*Pro* is *doubtful* in *propāgo*, both noun and verb, in *propīno*, *profundo*, *procūro*, *propello*, *propulso*, and in *Proserpīna*.

73. How is the quantity of the last syllable of every verse regarded?

The *last syllable* of every verse is regarded as *common*, or rather *long*, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice naturally made in passing to the next line.

## VERSIFICATION.

74. What is verse?

A **VERSE** is a certain number of long and short syllables succeeding each other according to some fixed rule, and forming what is called a line of poetry.

75. What is scanning?

**SCANNING** means the division of a verse into its proper feet.

76. What is a foot?

A **FOOT** is the measure of a verse: that is, a verse is divided into certain parts, each of which is called a foot.

77. Do verse and metre mean the same thing?

A *verse* is, strictly speaking, a line of poetry; its *metre*, or *measure*, is the number and kind of feet into which it is divided.

78. Is a single foot always a measure?

In *anapæstic*, *iambic*, and *trochaic* verse, a metre, or measure, consists of two feet; but in other kinds of verse a single foot constitutes a measure.

## CÆSURAL PAUSE.

79. What is the cæsural pause?

The cæsural pause is a natural pause or break which we make in reading a line of poetry, as in the following:

Not a drum was heard, || not a funeral note,  
 As his corse || to the ramparts we hurried;  
 Not a soldier discharged || his farewell shot  
 O'er the grave || where our hero we buried.  
 We buried him darkly || in the dead of night,  
 The sods || with our bayonets turning,  
 By the struggling moonbeams' || misty light,  
 And our lanterns || dimly burning.

80. What is meant by *cæsura* in scanning?

*CÆSURA* in scanning is when a syllable of a word is left after a foot is completed; as,

At domus | interi | or re | gali | splendida | luxu.

Sylves | trem tenu | i mu | sam medi | taris a | vena.

Here *or* in the first line, and *trem*, *i*, *sam* in the second, are *cæsural* syllables.

81. Is an attention to *cæsura* a matter of any importance?

The beauty and melody of a verse depend greatly on the *cæsura*: without it poetry differs but little from prose; as,

Romæ | mænia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis.

82. What is considered the *most beautiful* place for the *cæsural* pause, and what the *least*?

In hexameter verse the most beautiful place for the *cæsural* pause is at the first half of the third foot; as in the line

At domus | interi | or || re | gali | splendida | luxu.

The least beautiful that which divides the line into two equal parts; as in

Exple | ri men | tem nequit || ardes | citque tu | endo.

### HEROIC HEXAMETER.

83. Why is heroic hexameter so called?

*Heroic hexameter* is called *heroic* because it is the kind of verse employed to describe lofty actions, or the *actions of heroes*; and *hexameter* because it consists of *six* feet.

84. What are the feet employed in heroic verse?

The feet employed in heroic verse are the *dactyl*, consisting of one long and two short syllables; as, *dōmīnūs* (- ∪ ∪): and the *spondee*, consisting of two long syllables; as, *rēgēs* (- -).

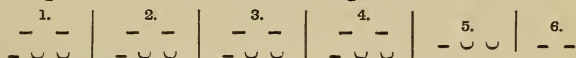
85. What other feet, besides the spondee and dactyl, are used by Horace?

Besides the spondee and dactyl, Horace uses the

Iambus,	∪ -	Choriambus,	- ∪ ∪ -
Trochee,	- ∪	Epitritus secundus,	- ∪ - -
Pyrrhic,	∪ ∪	Bacchiūs ( <i>āmāndō</i> ),	∪ - -

86. Of what feet does hexameter consist?

In hexameter verse the *first four feet* may be either dactyls or spondees, the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, and the *sixth* always a spondee; as in the following scheme:



87. How is the foot in the fifth place sometimes varied?

A spondee is sometimes used in the *fifth* place, and the line is then called *spondaic*; as,

Cără dē | ūm sōbō | lēs māg | nūm Jōvīs | īncrē | mēntūm.

88. What is the greatest number of syllables, and what the least, that can be used in a line of hexameter?

The *greatest* number of syllables that can be used in a hexameter is *seventeen*, when all the feet, except the last, are dactyls; as,

Quādrūpē | dāntē pū | trēm sōnī | tū quātīt | ūngŭlă | cāmpūm.

The *least* number is *thirteen*, when all the feet, except the fifth, are spondees; as,

Intōn | sī crī | nēs lōn | gā cēr | vīcē flū | ēbānt.

#### FIGURES OF SCANNING.

89. What is meant by a figure in scanning?

By a figure in scanning is meant certain changes upon words, to adapt them to the verse in scanning.

90. What are the principal of these?

The *principal figures* in scanning are *synalœpha*, *ecthlipsis*, *synaphœa*, *synæresis*, *diæresis*, *systôle*, and *diastôle*.

#### SYNALŒPHA.

91. What is synalœpha?

SYNALŒPHA is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong in the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant;

which is scanned thus:

Cōntīcū | ēr' ōm | nēs īn | tēntī | qu' ōră tē | nēbānt.

92. In what words does synalœpha seldom take place?

Synalœpha seldom takes place in the interjections *O, heu, pro, vœ, vah, hei*, and the like; as,

Hēu! ūbī | pāctā fīd | ēs ūbī | qūæ jūr | ārē sō | lēbās.

ECTHLIPSIS.

93. What is ecthlipsis?

ECTHLIPSIS is the cutting off of *m* with the vowel before it in the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or a silent *h*; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum;  
which is scanned,

Mōnstr' hōr | rēnd' īn | fōrm' īn | gēns cūi | lūmēn ā | dēmtūm.

SYNAPHŒA.

94. What is synaphœa?

SYNAPHŒA is the application of synalœpha and ecthlipsis to the end of a line which seems to have a superfluous syllable. When this is the case, the line will be found to *end* either with a *vowel* or *m*, and the next line to *begin* with a *vowel*. In the first case synalœpha applies, and in the second ecthlipsis, and the two lines are read continuously; as,

Omnia Mercurio similis, vocemque colorem | que  
Et flavos crines, etc. Scanned, *color' et, etc.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latino | rum  
Ardua cernebant, etc. Scanned *Latinor' Ardua, etc.*

95. Are the three foregoing figures to be regarded in reading Latin verse?

The three foregoing figures are to be regarded only in scanning, not in reading, Latin verse.

SYNÆRESIS.

96. What is synæresis?

SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one; as, *eä* into *ā*, *eī* into *ī*, *eō* into *ō*, *iis* into *īs*, etc., as in the following lines:

Seu lenta fuerint alvearia (*alvāria*) vimine texta.  
Centum aerii (*aerī*) claudunt vectes æternaque ferri.  
Deturbat laxatque foros simul accipit alveo (*alvō*).  
Connubiis (*connubīs*) arvisque novis operata juvenus.

## DIÆRESIS.

97. What is diæresis?

DIÆRESIS is the opposite of synæresis, and *divides* one syllable into two; as, *auræ* into *aurai*, *sylva* into *sylva*, *milvus* into *miluus*, *suadent* into *suaðent*, etc., as in the following lines:

Æthereum sensum, atque aurai simplicis ignem.  
Nunc mare, nunc siluæ. (*Hor.*)

## SYSTOLE AND DIASTOLE.

98. What are systole and diastole?

SYSTOLE and DIASTOLE are the opposites of each other. The former *shortens* a syllable long by nature or by position; as, *abjicit* for *ābjicit*, *stetērunt* and *dedērunt* for *stetērunt* and *dedērunt*. The latter *lengthens* a short syllable; thus, *rē* short is lengthened by diastole in the following line, and elsewhere:

Rēligione patrum multos servata per annos.

By many systole and diastole are considered poetic licenses rather than figures of prosody.

99. What do you understand by the words *ictus*, *arsis*, *thesis*?

*Ictus* (stroke), which is the same as *arsis* (elevation), means that syllable of a foot on which a particular stress of voice is laid, and *thesis* (depression) that on which no stress is laid. The natural place for the *arsis* is on the long syllable of a foot. Hence in hexameter the *arsis* always falls on the first part of a foot, and by this a syllable naturally short is sometimes made long.

## FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

100. What is a figure of etymology?

A *figure of etymology* is an unusual manner of writing a word.

101. Mention some of these figures.

PROSTHESIS is the *prefixing* of a letter or syllable to a word; as *gnatus* for *natus*.

APHÆRESIS is the *taking away* of a letter or syllable from a word; as *'st* for *est*.

EPENTHESIS is the *insertion* of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *alituum* for *alitum*.

SYNCOPE is the *omission* of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *dēum* for *deōrum*.

PARAGOGE is the *addition* of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as *claudier* for *claudi*.

APOCOPE is the *omission* of a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as *men'* for *mēne*.

CRASSIS is the *contraction* of two vowels into one; as *cōgo* for *coāgo*.

ANTITHESIS is the *substitution* of one letter for another; as *olli* for *illi*.

METATHESIS is the *changing* of the order of the letters in a word; as, *pistris* for *pristis*.

#### FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

102. What is a figure of syntax?

A *figure of syntax* is a deviation in some particular from the ordinary construction.

103. What are the figures of syntax?

The figures of syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallāge*, and *hyperbāton*.

104. What is ellipsis?

ELLIPSIS is the *omission* of one or more words in a sentence, which the context readily suggests. The word or words omitted are then said to be *understood*.

105. What are the words most commonly omitted?

The words most commonly omitted or understood are:

1. The personal pronouns with verbs; as, *cāno*, sc. *ego*; *moriamur*, sc. *nos*.

2. The indefinite *homīnes* with such verbs as *aiunt*, *fērunt*, *trādunt*, sc. *homīnes*.

3. *Templum* or *Ædes* before the name of deities; as, *a Vestæ*, sc. *a templo Vestæ*; *ad Jōvis*, sc. *ad ædem Jōvis*.



4. *Tempore* in such expressions as *ex eo, ex illo*, sc. *ex eo tempore, ex illo tempore*.

5. *Filius, filia uxor*; as, *Faustus Sullæ*, sc. *filius*; *Cæcilia Metelli*, sc. *filia*.

6. *Dīcam*; as, *Quid multa? Quid plura? Ne plura*, sc. *dicam*; *Quid?* sc. *censes or ais*; *Quid tum*, sc. *sequitur*.

7. *Dent or vēlint* in wishes; as, *Di meliora!* sc. *dent or vēlint*.

8. *Aio, dico, inquit*; as, *hic ego*, sc. *dīco or aio*; *tum ille*, sc. *inquit*.

9. The verb *est* in the compound tenses; as, *amātus*, sc. *est*; *doctūrus*, sc. *esse, etc.*

10. *Existente* and *existentibus*; as, *te iudice*, sc. *existente*; *Lepido et Tullo consulibus*, sc. *existentibus*.

106. What further is comprehended under ellipsis?

Under ellipsis are comprehended:

1. **ASYNDETON**, the omission of conjunctions; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci*, sc. *et*.

2. **ZEUGMA**, the connection of two nouns or two infinitives with a single verb which is applicable to only one of them; as, *pācem an bellum gērens*, where *gērens* is applicable only to *bellum*, and *āgens* must be supplied to *pācem*.

3. **SYLLEPSIS**, the agreement of an adjective or a verb with one of several nouns when it belongs to all; as, *sociis et rēge recepto*; *ille niger, tu candida esses*.

4. **SYNECHDOCHE**, the accusative of the part affected instead of the ablative; as, *os humerosque deo similis*; *explēri mentem nequit*.

107. What is pleonasm?

**PLEONASM**, *superfluity*, is the use of more words than are necessary to express the meaning; as, *sic ore locūta est*.

108. What is comprehended under pleonasm?

1. **POLYSYNDETON**, the use of unnecessary conjunctions; as, *ūna Eurūsq̄ Notusq̄ ruunt*.



2. HENDIADYS (one-by-two), the connection of two nouns by *et*, when the latter serves the part of an adjective; as, *poculum et aurum (aureum)*, a gold cup.

3. PERIPHRAISIS, a roundabout mode of expression; as, *tenēri fœtus ovium (agni)*, lambs.

109. What is enalläge?

ENALLAGE is a *change* or substitution of one word or part of speech for another.

110. What are included under enalläge?

1. *Antimeria*, the use of one part of speech for another; as, *nostrum vivere* for *nostra vita*; *conjugium* for *conjux*.

2. *Heterōsis*, the use of one form of a noun, pronoun, or verb for another; as, *Romānus victor* for *Romāni victōres*; *sustulērat* for *sustulisset*.

3. *Antiptōsis*, the use of one case for another; as, *cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo* for *Iūlus*.

4. *Synēsis* or *Synthēsis*, a construction according to the sense of the words, grammar being disregarded; as, *pars in crūcem acti*; *vox mea qui clāmo*.

5. *Anacolūthon*, in irregularity of construction, in which the last part of a sentence is not in harmony with the first.

111. What is hyperbăton?

HYPERBATON is a *transgression* of the usual order of words or clauses.

112. What are included under hyperbăton?

Hyperbăton includes:

1. *Anastrophe*, an *inversion* of the order of two words; as, *collo dare brachia circum* for *circumdare*, etc.; *nox erit una super* for *supererit*.

2. *Hysteron protēron* (the first last), a *reversion* of the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus*; *vălet atque vivit*.

3. *Hypalläge*, an *interchange* of constructions; as, *dare classibus Austris* for *dare classes Austris*.

4. *Tmesis* (a cutting), separating the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens* for *Septemtriōni*; *quæ me cunque vōcant terræ* for *quæcunque*. (See No. 1, *circumdare*.)

113. What is an Archaism, and what a Hellenism?

1. An **ARCHAISM** is an ancient form of construction; as, *opĕram abutitur* for *opĕrā*.

2. A **HELLENISM** is a Greek construction; as, *abstinĕto irārum* for *īris*.

#### DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

114. Under what general heads may the different kinds of metre be classed?

The different kinds of Latin metre may be classed under Iambic, Trochaic, Dactylic, and Choriambic metres.

115. From what do these get their names?

*Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, and *Choriambic* metres get their names from the *prevailing foot* used in each. These are also further distinguished by the *number of feet* used; also by some peculiarity either in the beginning or end of the verse; sometimes from the name of a poet who invented or used a particular species of verse.

116. Mention some of the terms used to mark these distinctions.

1. Verses are named from the number of metres they contain; as,

*Monomĕter*, consisting of *one* metre, or measure;

*Dimĕter*, consisting of *two* metres, or measures;

*Trimĕter*, consisting of *three* metres, or measures;

*Tetramĕter*, *four*; *Pentamĕter*, *five*; *Hexamĕter*, *six*; *Heptamĕter*, *seven*, etc.

2. From some peculiarity in their structure; as,

*Acatalectic*, when complete;

*Catalectic*, when a syllable is wanting at the end;

*Brachycatalectic*, when a foot is wanting at the end;

*Hypercatalectic*, when there is a superfluous syllable or foot;

*Acephalous*, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning.

3. From the name of some celebrated poet; as,  
*Alcæic*, from Alcæus, of Lesbos;  
*Alcmanian*, from Alcman or Alcmaeon, of Sparta;  
*Archilochian*, from Archilochus, of Paros;  
*Asclepiadic*, from Asclepiades, a Greek lyric poet;  
*Pherecratic*, from Pherecrates, of Athens;  
*Sapphic*, from Sappho, a poetess of Lesbos;  
*Adonic*, the verse employed by the Greeks in lamentations  
 for Adonis.

117. In naming a verse, how many terms are necessary?

In naming a verse *three terms* are necessary;

1. The *species* or kind of verse; as, *iambic*, *dactylic*, *choriambic*, etc.
2. The *number* of metres; as, *dimeter*, *trimeter*, *tetrameter*, etc.
3. The *ending* or *beginning*; as, *catalectic*, *acephalous*, etc.

NOTE.—1. When there is no irregularity (3) need not be named.

2. A well-known verse is often simply named; as, *Sapphic*, *Adonic*, *hexameter*, etc.

118. In what kinds of verse do *two* feet constitute a metre, or measure?

In *iambic*, *trochaic*, and *anapæstic* verses two feet constitute a metre; in the other kinds of verse a single foot is a metre.

119. Why has anapæstic verse not been included in the kinds of verse already enumerated? (114.)

No specimen of anapæstic verse has been found in the Latin writers of a purer age.

120. What is meant by *isochrönous* feet?

*Isochrönous* (equal-timed) *feet* are such as are capable of being divided into parts which are equal to each other in time. Thus a spondee is isochrönous with a dactyl or an anapæst (◡ ◡ -), and an iambus or a trochee with a tribrach (◡ ◡ ◡); but an iambus and a trochee are not isochrönous, because they can not be divided so as to have the corresponding parts equal in time; thus,

<i>Isoch.</i> {	Spond.,	-   -	Spond.,	- ◡   -	Iamb.,	◡   -	Troch.,	-   ◡
	Dactyl,	-   ◡ ◡	Anap.,	◡ ◡   -	Tribr.,	◡   ◡ ◡	Tribr.,	◡ ◡   ◡
<i>Not isochrönous.</i> { Iambus, ◡   -								
Trochee, -   ◡								

Isochrönous feet are interchangeable with each other; that is, one can take the place of another in certain kinds of verse—especially dactylic, iambic, and anapæstic.

A pure iambic consists entirely of iambs; as,

But in order to vary the rhythm and for ease in composition other feet were afterward admitted, especially the spondee in the odd places, and then other feet (not always isochronous); as in the following scheme and examples:

Însûr | găt Aqûi | lō quān | tūs āl | tīs mōn | tībūs. { *Spond. in 1, 3, 5;*  
*trib. in 2.*  
Cănīdī | ă brēvī | būs īm | plīcā | tă vī | pērīs.—*Dact. in 1; trib. in 2.*  
Pōsītōs | quē vēr | nās dī | tīs ēx | āmēn | dōmūs. { *Anapæst in 1;*  
*spondee in 3, 5.*

METRES OF HORACE.

Horace uses *twenty* different kinds of metre, either separately or combined.

The Satires and Epistles of Horace are written in dactylic hexameter. (117.)

The nineteen other kinds of verse Horace uses are,

Dactylic, lesser (Alcaic), . . . . . (ix)      -   u   u   |   -   u   |   -   u

\* Roman numerals refer to METRES OF HORACE.

Dactylic trimeter catalectic (Archilochian), . . . . .	(xiii)	- u u   - u u   -
Dactylic tetram., <i>a posteriore</i> , (vii)	{	- u u   - u u   - u u   - -
Dactylic tetrameter, <i>a priore</i> (Alemanian), . . . . .	(iv)	{ - u u   - u u   - u u   - u u
Choriambic dimeter, . . . . .	(viii)	- u u -   u - -
Choriambic trim. (Glyconic), (iii)		- -   - u u -   u -
Choriambic trim. catalectic (Pherecratian), . . . . .	(v)	- -   - u u -   - u u -   -
Choriambic tetram. (minor) Asclepiadic), . . . . .	(i)	- -   - u u -   - u u -   u -
Choriambic tetram., <i>altered</i> , (viii)		- u - -   - u u -   - u u -   u - -
Choriambic pentam. (greater) Asclepiadic), . . . . .	(x)	- -   - u u -   - u u -   - u u -   u -
Iambic dimeter acatalectic, ..	(xiv)	u -   u -   u -   u -
Iambic dimeter acephalous, .	(xi)	-   u -   u -   u -
Iambic dimeter hypercatalect. (Archilochian), . . . . .	(ix)	{ u -   u -   - -   u -   -
Iambic trimeter acatalectic, (xiv)		u -   u -   u -   u -   u -   u -
Iambic trimeter catalectic, . .	(iv)	u -   u -   u -   u -   u -   -
Ionic, <i>a minore</i> , . . . . .	(xii)	u u - -   u u - -   u u - -   u u - -
Sapphic, . . . . .	(ii)	- u   - -   - u u   - u   - u

126. What is to be understood by *a posteriore* and *a priore* in dactylic measure?

*A posteriore* means the last four feet of a hexameter, and *a priore*, the first four feet.

127. Describe the metres of Horace more particularly, as they are used separately or combined, and exemplify them by verses.

Taking the Odes of Horace in the order in which we find them, we have,

I. Single lines: *Asclepiadic choriambic tetrameter*; consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mæcē | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē | gībūs.—(*Bk. I. 1.*)

Or, as the cæsural pause in this measure falls at the end of the first choriambus, it may be scanned as a dactylic pentameter, with a cæsural syllable after the first dactyl; as,

Mæcē | nās ātā | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

The first method is the most approved.

II. Stanzas of four lines: the three first are *Sapphic*, consisting of five feet; a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees: the fourth is *Adonic*, consisting of a dactyl and a spondee; as,

1. Jām sǎ | tīs tēr | rīs nīvis | ātquē | dīrǎē
2. Grāndī | nīs mī | sīt pătēr, | ēt, rū | bēntě (See 52.)
3. Dēxtēr | ā sǎ | crās jācū | lātūs | ārcēs,
4. Tērrūt | ūrbēm. (Bk. I. 2.)

III. Stanzas of two lines: the first, *Choriambic trimeter* or *Glyconic*, consisting of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; the second is *Asclepiadic choriambic* (I.); as,

1. Sīc tē | dīvā pōtēns | Cŷprī,
2. Sīc frā | trēs Hēllēnāē | lūcīdā sīd | ěrā.—(Bk. I. 3.)

IV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is called Archilochian heptameter, and consists of a *Dactylic tetrameter a priore* (the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter, the fourth being always a dactyl) and three trochees. The second is *Iambic trimeter, catalectic*, consisting of six iambs (spondees being admitted into the odd feet, first and third, but not the fifth) and a catalectic syllable; as,

1. Sōlvītūr | ācrīs hī | ēms grā | tā vīcē | vērīs | ēt Fǎ | vōnī.
2. Trāhūnt | quē sīc | cās mā | chīnāē | cārī | nās.
7. Āltēr | nō tēr | rām quātī | ūnt pēdē | dūm grā | vēs Cŷ | elōpūm.
8. Vūlcā | nūs ār | dēns ūr | ĩt ōf | fīcī | nās.—(Bk. I. 4.)

V. Stanzas of four lines: the two first are *Asclepiadic* (I.), the third is *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratian*; consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and a catalectic syllable; the fourth is *Glyconic* (III.); as,

1. Quīs mūl | tā grācīlīs | tē pūrē ĩn | rōsā
2. Pērfū | sūs līquīdīs | ūrgēt ōdōr | ĩbūs
3. Grātō | Pŷrrhǎ, sūb ān | trō?
4. Cuī flā | vām rēlīgās | cōmām.—(Bk. I. 5.)

VI. Stanzas of four lines: the three first are *Asclepiadic* (I.), the fourth is *Glyconic* (III.); as,

1. Scrībē | rīs Vārīō | fōrtīs ēt hōs | tīūm
2. Vīctōr | Mǎōnīī | cārminīs āl | ĩtē,
3. Quām rēm | cūnquē fērōx | nāvībūs aūt | ěquīs
4. Mīlēs, | tē dūcē gēs | sērīt.—(Bk. I. 6.)



VII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.), the second *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, that is, the last four feet of a *Dactylic hexameter*; as,

1. Laūdā | būnt ālī | ī clā | rām Rhōdōn | aut Mītý | lēnēn,
2. Aūt Ēphē | sōn bīmā | rīsvē Cō | rīnthī.
3. Īnsīg | nēs aut | Thēssālā | Tēmpē.—(Bk. I. 7.)

VIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Choriambic dimeter*, consisting of a *choriambus* and a *bacchius* (υ - -); the second is *Choriambic tetrameter, altered*, the first foot being an *epitritus secundus* (- υ - -) instead of a *choriambus*; the last foot is a *bacchius*; as,

1. Lýdīā dīc, | pēr ōmnēs
2. Tē dēōs ō | rō, Sýbārīn | cūr prōpērās | āmāndō.—(Bk. I. 8.)

IX. Stanzas of four lines: the first two are *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, consisting of a spondee or an iambus, an iambus, a cæsural syllable, a *choriambus*, and an iambus, or the last two feet may be dactyls; the third line is *Iambic dimeter hypercatalectic*, or *Archilochian*, consisting of an iambus or spondee, an iambus, a spondee, an iambus, and an additional syllable; the fourth is *Lesser Dactylic Alcaic*, and consists of two dactyls and two trochees; as,

1. Vīdēs | ūt āl | tā | stēt nīvē cān | dīdūm, or
2. Sōrāc | tē nēc | jān | sūstīnē | ānt ōnūs
3. Sīlvā | lābō | rāntēs | gēlū | qūe,
4. Flūmīnā | cōnstītē | rīnt ā | cūtō.—(Bk. I. 9.)

NOTE.—This is Horace's favorite stanza, and is therefore called the Horatian Stanza.

X. Single lines: *Choriambic pentameter*, or *Greater Asclepiad*, consisting of a spondee, three *choriambi*, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāsiērīs | scīrē nēfās | quēm mīhī quēm | tībī.—(Bk. I. 11.)

XI. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic dimeter acephalous*, consisting of a long syllable and three iambs; the second is *Iambic trimeter catalectic* (IV.); as,

1. Nōn | ēbūr | nēqu' aū | rēūm
2. Mēā | rēnī | dēt īn | dōmō | lēcū | nār.—(Bk. II. 18.)



XII. Single lines: *Ionic a minore*, consisting of four feet of that measure (˘ ˘ - -), (see 125); as,

Mīsērār' ēst | nēqu' āmōrī | dārē lūdūm | nēquē dūlcī.—(Bk. III. 12.)

XIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, consisting of two dactyls and a catalectic syllable; as,

1. Diffū | gērē nī | vēs rēdē | ūnt jān | grāmīnā | cāmpīs.

2. Ārbōrī | būsquē cō | mā.—(Bk. IV. 7.)

XIV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic trimeter* (Senarius), consisting of six iambs, but admitting a spondee in the odd places, or a foot equivalent to an iambus or a spondee in any place but the last; the second is *Iambic dimeter*, consisting of four iambs, and subject to the same law of substitution; as,

Ībīs | Lībūr | nīs īn | tēr āl | tā nāv | iūm.

Āmī | cē prō | pūgnāc | ūlā.—(Epod. 1.)

XV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic trimeter* (XIV.); the second is sometimes read as two lines, but may be scanned as one: the first part as a *Dactylic trimeter catalectic* (XIII.), and the second as an *Iambic dimeter*, consisting of four iambs (XIV.) This metre is styled Dactylico-iambic.

1. Pētī | nīhīl | mē sīc | ūt ānt | ēā | jūvāt.

2. Scrībērē | vērsicū | lōs || āmō | rē pēr | cūssūm | grāvī.—(Epod. 11.)

XVI. Stanzas of two lines; the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second is sometimes read as two lines, but always scanned in two parts,—the first *Iambic dimeter* (XIV.), the second *Dactylic trimeter catalectic* (XV.) This metre is styled Iambico-dactylic, and is the reverse of the former.

1. Hōrrīdā | tēmpēs | tās cōel | ūm cōn | trāxīt ēt | īmbrēs.

4. Ōcā | sīō | nēm dē | dīē || dūmquē vī | rēnt gēnū | ā.—(Epod. 13.)

XVII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Iambic dimeter* (XV.); as,

1. Nōx ērāt | ēt cōel | ō fūl | gēbāt | lūnā sē | rēnō.

Īntēr | mīnōr | ā sī | dērā.—(Epod. 15.)

XVIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Iambic trimeter* (XIV.); as,

1. Ālterā | jān tērī | tūr bāl | līs cīv | ilībūs | āētās.  
 2. Sūīs | ēt īp | sū Rō | mǎ vīr | ībūs | rūīt.—(*Epod.* 16.)

XIX. Single lines: *Iambic trimeter*; as,

- Jām jān | āffī | cācī | dō mǎnūs | scīēn | tīā.—(*Epod.* 17.)

### INDEX TO THE METRES. OF HORACE.

Æli vetusto, . . . . .	9	Musis amicus, . . . . .	9
Æquam memento, . . . . .	9	Natis in usum, . . . . .	9
Altera jam teritur, . . . . .	18	Ne forte credas, . . . . .	9
Angustam amice, . . . . .	9	Nolis longa feræ, . . . . .	6
At Ō deorum, . . . . .	14	Non ebur neque, . . . . .	11
Bacchum in remotis, . . . . .	9	Non semper imbres, . . . . .	9
Beatus ille, . . . . .	14	Non usitatis, . . . . .	9
Cælo supinas, . . . . .	9	Nullam, Vare, . . . . .	11
Cælo tonantem, . . . . .	9	Nullus argento, . . . . .	2
Cum tu, Lydia, . . . . .	3	Nunc est bibendum, . . . . .	9
Cur me querelis, . . . . .	9	O Diva, gratum, . . . . .	9
Delicta majorum, . . . . .	9	O fons Bandusiæ, . . . . .	5
Descende cælo, . . . . .	9	O matre pulchra, . . . . .	9
Dianam teneræ, . . . . .	5	O nata mecum, . . . . .	9
Diffugere nives, . . . . .	13	O navis, referunt, . . . . .	5
Dive, quem proles, . . . . .	2	O sæpe mecum, . . . . .	9
Divis orte bonis, . . . . .	6	O Venus, regina, . . . . .	2
Donarem pateras, . . . . .	1	Odi profanum, . . . . .	9
Donec gratus eram, . . . . .	3	Otium divos, . . . . .	2
Eheu! fugaces, . . . . .	9	Parcus deorum, . . . . .	9
Est mihi nonum, . . . . .	2	Parentis olim, . . . . .	14
Et thure et fidibus, . . . . .	3	Pastor cum traheret, . . . . .	6
Exegi monumentum, . . . . .	1	Persicos odi, . . . . .	2
Faune Nympharum, . . . . .	2	Phœbe sylvarum, . . . . .	2
Festo quid potius, . . . . .	3	Phœbus volentem, . . . . .	9
Herealis ritu, . . . . .	2	Pindarum quisquis, . . . . .	2
Horrida tempestas, . . . . .	16	Poscimus si quid, . . . . .	2
Ibis Liburnis, . . . . .	14	Quæ cura patrum, . . . . .	9
Icci, beatis, . . . . .	9	Qualem ministrum, . . . . .	9
Ille et nefasto, . . . . .	9	Quando repostum, . . . . .	14
Impios parvæ, . . . . .	2	Quantum distet, . . . . .	3
Inclusam Danaen, . . . . .	6	Quem tu, Melpomene, . . . . .	3
Intactis opulentior, . . . . .	3	Quem virum, . . . . .	2
Integer vitæ, . . . . .	2	Quid bellicosus, . . . . .	9
Jam jam efficaci, . . . . .	19	Quid dedicatum, . . . . .	9
Jam pauca aratro, . . . . .	9	Quid immerentes, . . . . .	14
Jam satis terris, . . . . .	2	Quis desiderio, . . . . .	6
Jam veris comites, . . . . .	6	Quis multa gracilis, . . . . .	5
Justum et tenacem, . . . . .	9	Quo me Bacche, . . . . .	3
Landabant alii, . . . . .	7	Quo, quo, scelesti, . . . . .	14
Lupis et agnis, . . . . .	14	Rectius vives, . . . . .	2
Lydia, dic, . . . . .	8	Scriberis Vario, . . . . .	6
Mæcenas atavis, . . . . .	1	Septimi, Gades, . . . . .	2
Mala soluta, . . . . .	14	Sic te Diva potens, . . . . .	3
Martis cœlebs, . . . . .	2	Solvitur aeris hyems, . . . . .	4
Mater sæva cupidinum, . . . . .	3	Te maris et terræ, . . . . .	7
Mercuri, facunde, . . . . .	2	Tu ne quæsieris, . . . . .	10
Mercuri, nam te, . . . . .	2	Tyrrhena regum, . . . . .	9
Miserarum est, . . . . .	12	Velox amœnum, . . . . .	9
Montium custos, . . . . .	2	Vides ut alta, . . . . .	9
Motum ex Metello, . . . . .	9	Vile potabis, . . . . .	2

## APPENDIX.

## SYNOPTICAL TABLES.

## GENDERS.

1ST DECL.	2D DECL.	3D DECL.	4TH DECL.	5TH DECL.
<i>Masculine</i> , *	er, ir, ur, us,	er, or, os, n, o,	us,	*
<i>Feminine</i> , a,	(us),	{io, as, es, is, aus, x, } {s <i>imp. long</i> do, go, }	*	es,
<i>Neuter</i> , *	um.	{c, a, l, e, t, ar, } {men, ur, us. }	u.	<i>none.</i>

## DECLENSIONS.

## NOUNS.

SINGULAR.							
FIRST.	SECOND.		THIRD.		FOURTH.		FIFTH.
FEM.	MASC.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	NEUT.	FEM.
Nom. ā,	ūs, ěr,	ŭm,	<i>various.</i>	<i>various.</i>	ūs, ŭ,		ēs,
Gen. æ,	ī,	ī,	īs,	īs,	ūs, ŭs,		ēī,
Dat. æ,	ō,	ō,	ī,	ī,	uī, ŭ,		ēī,
Acc. ām,	ŭm,	ŭm,	ēm (īm),	<i>like nom.</i>	ŭm, ŭ,		ēm,
Voc. ā,	ě,	ŭm,	<i>like nom.</i>	<i>like nom.</i>	ūs, ŭ,		ēs,
Abl. ā.	ō.	ō.	ě (ī).	ě (ī).	ū. ŭ.		ě.

PLURAL.							
FIRST.	SECOND.		THIRD.		FOURTH.		FIFTH.
FEM.	MASC.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	NEUT.	FEM.
Nom. æ,	ī,	ā,	ēs,	ā (iā),	ūs, uā,		ēs,
Gen. ārum,	ōrum, ōrum,		ŭm (ium),	ŭm (ium),	uŭm, uŭm,		ērum,
Dat. īs,	īs,	īs,	ībus,	ībus,	ībus (ūbūs),		ēbūs,
Acc. ās,	ōs,	ā,	ēs,	ā (iā),	ūs, uā,		ēs,
Voc. æ,	ī,	ā,	ēs,	ā (iā),	ūs, uā,		ēs,
Abl. īs.	īs.	īs.	ībus.	ībus.	ībus. ībus.		ēbus.

## ADJECTIVES.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūs, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	æ,	ǎ.
Gen.	ī,	æ,	ī.	ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
Dat.	ō,	æ,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.
Acc.	ŭm,	ǎm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ǎ.
Voc.	ě, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	æ,	ǎ.
Abl.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.

## THIRD DECLENSION. (GENERAL FORM.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	—	—	—	es,	es,	īǎ.
Gen.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ium,	ium,	ium.
Dat.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ibus,	ibus,	ibus.
Acc.	ēm,	ēm,	—	ēs,	ēs,	īǎ.
Voc.	<i>like nom.,</i>	<i>like nom.,</i>	<i>like nom.</i>	ēs,	ēs,	īǎ.
Abl.	ě, or ī,	ě, or ī,	ě, or ī.	ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

## THIRD DECLENSION. (ADJECTIVES IN IS—E.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	īs,	īs,	ě.	ēs,	ēs,	ia.
Gen.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ium,	ium,	ium.
Dat.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ibus,	ibus,	ibus.
Acc.	ēm,	ēm,	ě.	ēs,	ēs,	ia.
Voc.	īs,	īs,	ě.	ēs,	ēs,	ia.
Abl.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

## FORM FOR THE COMPARATIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iōr,	iōr,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Gen.	iōris,	iōris,	iōris.	iōrum,	iōrum,	iōrum.
Dat.	iōri,	iōri,	iōri.	ioribus,	ioribus,	ioribus.
Acc.	iōrem,	iōrem,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Voc.	iōr,	iōr,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Abl.	iōre, or iōri, etc.			ioribus,	ioribus,	ioribus.

## \* GENDER RULES.

---

### FROM THE SIGNIFICATION.

I. What nouns denote a *he* are masculine,  
But every *she* as female we decline.

(*Exc.*) Some offices of men we female make,  
And from the ending the right gender take :  
Excubiæ, opëra, also copiæ,  
Vigiliæ, curia, and custodiæ.  
Prostitūlum, scortum, servitium, we have  
As neuters, though meaning a female or slave.

II. Months, rivers, winds, and mountains pass for *he's*,  
Trees, countries, cities, isles, and herbs are *she's*,  
With gems, and ships that sail the seas.

(*Exc.* 1) Call *rūbus*, *dūmus* males, and trees in *ster*,  
Trees neuter are in *ur*, and *um*, and *er*.

(*Exc.* 2) What hills or rivers end in *a*  
Are mostly fem'nine, except *Adria*.

(*Exc.* 3) Cities in *i* and *o*, and *Agrāgas*  
Are males; but *ur* and *um* for neuters pass.

(*Exc.* 4) Cities ending in *us* of the third, we do name  
As males; *Sason*, *Tunes*, and *Tecmon*, the same.

(*Exc.* 5) Those sing'lar in *i*, and *a* plural, are neuter;  
And so we decline *Gadir*, *Argos*, and *Tuder*.

III. Some nouns there are a general sense which have,  
Denote each sex, and so both genders crave :  
*Conjux* atque *pārens*, *infans*, *patruēlis*, *hæres*,  
*Affinis*, *vindex*, *jūdex*, *dux*, *mīles*, et *hostis*,  
*Augur* et *antistes*, *martyr*, *convīva*, *sacerdos*,  
*Municepsque*, *vātes*, *adolescens*, *cīvis* et *auctor*,  
*Custos*, *præ*s, *cōmes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *cānisque*.

- IV. The following nouns which in order we touch on,  
Are common in sense, but not so in construction :

*Advēna, cœlicōla, cliens, assecla, camēlus,*  
*Transvēna, ruricōla, cocles, alienagēnaque*  
*Agricōla, juvēnis, obses opifexque, lanista,*  
*Eques, exul, nēmo et index, aurīga, latroque*  
*Homicīda, princeps et paricīda, indigēnaque*  
*Interpres, hospes, lixa, cum pūgil, hōmoque,*  
*Pēdes et pincerna, præsul, fur, rabūla, sēnex.*

FROM THE ENDING—FIRST DECLENSION.

- V. The First declension ends in *a*;  
Each noun is feminine, as *hæc mūsa*.  
(*Exc.*) *Planēta, comēta*, though ending in *a*,  
Have *hic, pascha hoc*; doubtful *talpa, dāma*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

- VI. The Second ends in *er, ir, ur*, and *us*,  
And should be masculine, like *domīnus*.  
VII. Greek nouns in *us* are mostly feminine found,  
With *alvus*, the belly, and *hūmus*, the ground;  
Together with *cōlus*, a woman's distaff,  
And *vannus*, a fan to winnow out chaff.  
VIII. All nouns in *um* with neuters place,  
And substantives that vary in no case;  
Add *vīrus*, juice or poison, and *pelāgus*, the sea,  
But *vulgus hic et hoc* its gender claims to be.  
IX. *Pampīnus* and *grossus, barbītus, camēlus,*  
*Balānus* and *atōmus*, together with *phasēlus*,  
Are masculine or feminine, so the grammars tell us.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

X. The Third has males in *er, or, os, n, o*;  
Long words are feminine in *do* and *go*.

(Exc. 1) Hoc *spinther, ver, ūter, gingīber, lāver*,  
And *ūber* and *tūber*, and *sīser, papāver*,  
And *cīcer*, and *pīper, lāser, cadāver*.

(Exc. 2) *Cor, ador, æquor, os*, and *marmor*  
Are neuter; *hæc, dos, cos*, and *arbor*.

(Exc. 3) Hoc *inguen* and *glūten*, with *pollen* and *unguen*;  
*Hæc ædon, halcyon, īcon* and *sindon*.

(Exc. 4) *Grando, cāro* and *hālo* are feminine too;  
But *harpāgo* the masculine claims as its due.

XI. Third nouns in *io* mostly *hæc* procure,  
With *as, aus, es, is, x*, and *s* impure.

(Exc. 1) Nouns ending in *io* which numbers express,  
Or substance, material, are males without guess.

(Exc. 2) *As, assis*, and nouns in *as*—*antis* hic name;  
*Vas, vassis*, and nouns in *as*—*atis*, hoc claim.

(Exc. 3) *Cacoëthes* not varied with all of this stock,  
And *nepenthes, aes, panāces*, always have hoc.

XII. A number excepted in *es, is, s, x*,  
Are males; for example, *rex, phœnix, bombyx*.

(a) *Rex, phœnix, bombyx, chālybs, vārix*,  
*Grex, vortex, sōrex, volvox, cālix* :

(b) *Gryps, cespes, tradux, līmes, ensis*,  
*Glis, fōmes, torris, gurgēs, mensis* :

(c) *Cenchris, vēpres, vermis, vertex*,  
*Bes, callis, caulis, fustis, vērvox* :



- (d) Mons, spādix, rūdens, vectis, follis,  
Pons, tērmes, axis, tāpes, collis,  
Mugīlis, fornix, lēbes, pollis :
- (e) Liēnis, urpex, sentis, āpex,  
Dens, orbis, frūtex, torris, lātex :
- (f) Pes, palmes, pōples, stīpes, trāmes,  
And paries, caudex, tūdes, āmes :
- (g) Seps, unguis, magnes, sanguis, pūlex,  
So pōdex, mūrex, hydrops, cūlex :
- (h) Acināces, postis, piscis, fascis,  
Fons, coccyx, lāpis, cīmex, cassis :
- (i) All nouns in *nīs*, with onyx, stōrax,  
Cucūmis, natrix, vōmis, thōrax :
- (j) And rūmex, mērops, nefrens, ōryx,  
So hallux, hallex, cōdex, pollex.

XIII. The poets these for males or females take,  
Just as it serves their turn for verses' sake :  
Lynx, būbo, perdix, also fīnis,  
Calx, limax, ōbex, torques, cīnis,  
Scrobs, pulvis, clūnis, pūmex, sandyx,  
Canālis, corbis, ādeps, imbrex,  
Stirps, grus, et sīlex, anguis cortex.

XIV. Nouns ending in *e, a, l, e, t* (calet), *ar, men, ur*, and *us*,  
May with the neuter kind be placed by *us*.

- (Exc. 1) *Uris, utis*, and *udis*, from *us*, we design,  
If more than one syllable, with *hæc* to decline.
- (Exc. 2) *Sol, turtur, sālar, mus*, and *trīpus*,  
With *furfur, vultur, sal*, and *lepus*,  
Are always masculine with *us*.

NOTE.—*Sal* is masculine in the plural.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

XV. The Fourth in *us* are chiefly masculine;  
 But nouns in *u* as neuters we decline;  
*Porticus, tribus, manus*, are feminine,  
 With *cölus, ficus, dömus*; but these three  
 Both of the Second and the Fourth may be;  
*Cupressus, cornus, pīnus*, such you'll see.

(Exc.) *Pēnus*, provision, and *spēcus*, a cave,  
 May both declensions and *all genders* have.

XVI. *Pampīnus, grossus, barbītus, camēlus*,  
*Balānus, cölus, atömus, phasēlus*,  
 Are males or females—so the learned tell us:  
*Hoc vīrus, chaos, pelāgus, and mēlos*.  
*Hic aut hoc vulgus* the language doth show,  
 And chaos has always the ablative chao.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

XVII. The Fifth are feminine, and end in *es*;  
 But one is masculine—*meridies*.

(Exc.) In the singular as doubtful is *dies* declined,  
 But masculine only in the plural we find.

## IRREGULAR AND AUXILIARY VERB.

SUM, ESSE, FUI, FUTURUS, *to be*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	Singular,	sum,	<i>I am,</i>
		ēs,	<i>thou art,</i>
		est,	<i>he is;</i>
	Plural,	sūmus,	<i>we are,</i>
		estis,	<i>you are,</i>
		sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.	{	eram,	<i>I was,</i>
		eras,	<i>thou wast,</i>
		erat,	<i>he was;</i>
		erāmus,	<i>we were,</i>
		erātis,	<i>you were,</i>
		erant,	<i>they were.</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	{	ero,	<i>I shall or will be,</i>
		eris,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be,</i>
		erit,	<i>he shall or will be;</i>
		erīmus,	<i>we shall or will be,</i>
		eritis,	<i>you shall or will be,</i>
		erunt,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	{	fui,	<i>I was or have been,</i>
		fuiſti,	<i>thou wast or hast been,</i>
		fuit,	<i>he was or has been;</i>
		fuīmus,	<i>we were or have been,</i>
		fuiſtis,	<i>you were or have been.</i>
		fuērunt, or -ēre,	<i>they were or have been.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	{	fuiſſem,	<i>I had been,</i>
		fuiſſes,	<i>thou hadſt been,</i>
		fuiſſet,	<i>he had been;</i>
		fuiſſēmus,	<i>we had been,</i>
		fuiſſētis,	<i>you had been,</i>
		fuiſſent,	<i>they had been.</i>
FUT. PERF. TENSE.	{	fuēro,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
		fuēris,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
		fuērit,	<i>he will have been;</i>
		fuerīmus,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
		fuerītis,	<i>you will have been,</i>
		fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	{	ſim,	<i>I may or can be,</i>
		ſis,	<i>thou mayſt or canſt be,</i>
		ſit,	<i>he may or can be;</i>
		ſīmus,	<i>we may or can be,</i>
		ſītis,	<i>you may or can be,</i>
		ſint,	<i>they may or can be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.	{	essem,	<i>I might, could, would, or should be,</i>
		esses,	<i>thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, etc., be,</i>
		esset,	<i>he might, could, would, or should be;</i>
		essēmus,	<i>we might, could, would, or should be,</i>
		essētis,	<i>you might, could, would, or should be,</i>
		essent,	<i>they might, could, would, or should be.</i>

PERFECT TENSE.	{	fuërim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
		fuëris,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>
		fuërit,	<i>he may have been;</i>
		fuerīmus,	<i>we may have been,</i>
		fuerītis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
		fuërint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.	{	fuissem,	<i>I might have been,</i>
		fuiesses,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>
		fuisset,	<i>he might have been;</i>
		fuissēmus,	<i>we might have been,</i>
		fuissētis,	<i>you might have been,</i>
		fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |    |                  |                                |
|----|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2. | ēs, or esto,     | <i>be thou, or do thou be,</i> |
| 3. | esto,            | <i>let him be;</i>             |
| 2. | este, or estōte, | <i>be ye, or do ye be,</i>     |
| 3. | sunto,           | <i>let them be.</i>            |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	esse,	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	futūrus esse,	<i>to be about to be.</i>
FUT. PERF.,	futūrus fuisse,	<i>to have been about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	futūrus,	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	----------	---------------------

Two compounds of *sum*, namely, *absum* and *præsum*, have a present participle in *ens*: *absens* and *præsens*, though these are to be regarded rather as adjectives.

## SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I love, do love, am loving, etc.*)

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
1. ăm	-o,	-as,	-at;	-ămus,	-ătis,	-ant.
2. mǎn	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3. { rēg	-o,	is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
{ cǎp	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
4. aud	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

1. ăm -ă } IMPERFECT TENSE. (*I loved, did love, was loving, etc.*)  
 2. mǎn -ē }  
 3. { rēg -ē } bam, bas, bat; bāmus, bātis. bant.  
 { cǎp -iē }  
 4. aud -iē }

FUTURE TENSE. (*I shall or will love, etc.*)

1. am -ă } bo, bis bit bīmus, bītis, bunt.	
2. mǎn -ē }	
3. { rēg -am, -es -et -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.	
{ cǎp }	
4. aud } -iam, -ies -iet -iēmus, -iētis, -ient.	

1. amāv } PERFECT TENSE. (*I loved, did love, have loved, etc.*)  
 2. mǎnu }  
 3. { rex } -i, -isti, it; -īmus, -istis, { -ērunt  
 { cēp } or  
 4. audīv } -ēre.

1. amāv } PLUPERFECT TENSE. (*I had loved, etc.*)  
 2. mǎnu }  
 3. { rex } -eram, -eras, -erat; -erāmus, -erātis, -erant.  
 { cēp }  
 4. audīv }

1. amāv } FUTURE PERFECT TENSE. (*I shall have loved, etc.*)  
 2. mǎnu }  
 3. { rex } -ēro, ēris, -ērit; erīmus, -erītis, -ērint.  
 { cēp }  
 4. audīv }

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I may or can love, etc.*)

1. ăm	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. mǎne						
3. { rēg	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
{ cǎpi }						
4. audi						

## SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*

1. am -ā	} IMPERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I might, could, would, or should love, etc.</i> )	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
2. mon-ē							
3. { reg -ē							
4. { cap -ē							
4. aud -ī		rem	res,	ret;	rēmus,	rētis,	rent.

1. amav	} PERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I may or can have loved, etc.</i> )						
2. monu							
3. { rex		-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērīnt.
4. { cep							
4. audīv							

1. amav	} PLUPERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I might, could, etc., have loved, etc.</i> )						
2. monu							
3. { rex		-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
4. { cep							
4. audīv							

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.  <i>Love thou, or do thou love, etc.</i>	1. ām -a or -āto,	-āto;	-āte or -atōte,	-anto.
	2. mōn-e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -etōte,	-ento.
	3. { rēg -e or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -itōte,	-unto.
	4. { cāp -e or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -itōte,	-iunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRESENT,	amāre,	monēre,	regēre, capēre,	audīre.
PERFECT,	amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse, cepisse,	audivisse.
FUTURE,	amatūrus	monitūrus	rectūrus, captūrus	auditūrus
	esse,	esse,	esse,	esse.
FUT. PERF.,	amatūrus	monitūrus	rectūrus, captūrus	auditūrus
	fuisse,	fuisse,	fuisse,	fuisse.

## PARTICIPLES.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRES., <i>Loving, etc.,</i>	āmans,	mōnens,	rēgens, capiens,	audiens.
FUT., <i>About to love,</i>	amatūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus, captūrus,	auditūrus.

GERUND.	1. Nom. <i>wanting;</i>	Gen. amandi;	Dat. amando, <i>etc.</i>
	2. Nom. <i>wanting;</i>	Gen. monendi;	Dat. monendo, <i>etc.</i>
	3. Nom. <i>wanting;</i>	Gen. { regendi;	Dat. { regendo, <i>etc.</i>
	4. Nom. <i>wanting;</i>	Gen. { capiendi;	Dat. { capiendo, <i>etc.</i>
		Gen. audiendi;	Dat. audiendo, <i>etc.</i>

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
SUPINES.	<i>Former,</i> amātum,	monitum,	rectum, captum,	auditum.
	<i>Latter,</i> amātu,	monītu,	rectu, captu,	audītu.





## SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued.*

1. am -ā	} IMPERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I might, could, etc., be loved, etc.</i> )	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
2. mon-ē							
3. { reg -ē							
4. { cap -ē							
4. aud -ī		rer,	rēris <i>or</i> rēre,	rētur;	rēmur,	remīni,	rentur.

1. amātus	} PERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I may or can have been loved, etc.</i> )						
2. monitus		sim	sis	sit	simus	sītis	sint
3. { rectus		<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
4. { captus		fuērim,	fuēris,	fuērit;	fuerīmus,	fuerītis,	fuērint.
4. auditus							

1. amātus	} PLUPERFECT TENSE. ( <i>I might, could, etc., have been loved.</i> )						
2. monitus		essem	esses	esset	essēmus	essētis	essent
3. { rectus		<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
4. { captus		fuissem,	fuisses,	fuisset;	fuissēmus,	fuissētis,	fuissent.
4. auditus							

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. <i>Be thou loved, or do thou be loved, etc.</i>	1. am -āre <i>or</i> -ātor,	-ātor;	-amīni,	-antor.
	2. mon-ēre <i>or</i> -ētor,	-ētor;	-emīni,	-entor.
	3. { reg -ēre <i>or</i> -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-untor.
	4. { cap -ēre <i>or</i> -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.
	4. aud -īre <i>or</i> -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRESENT,	amāri,	monēri,	rēgi, cāpi,	audīri.
PERFECT, {	amātus,	monītus	{ rectus, captus	audītus
	esse <i>or</i> fuisse,		esse <i>or</i> fuisse.	
FUTURE, {	amātum	{ monītum	{ rectum, captum	audītum
	īri,	īri,	īri,	īri.

## PARTICIPLES.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRES. { <i>Loved, or being loved.</i>	amātus,	monītus,	rectus, captus,	audītus.
FUTURE AND GERUNDIVE.	{ amandus, monendus, regendus, capiendus, audiendus.			

## LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL VERBS,

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR, OF THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the first conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the first conjugation are *o, āre, āvi, ātum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	<i>to love.</i>
Muto,	mutāre,	mutāvi,	mutatum,	<i>to change.</i>

Mention those that are irregular in the perfect and supine.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	<i>to give.</i>
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	<i>to stand.</i>
Lāvo,	{ lavāre, or lavēre, }	lāvi,	{ lōtum, lautum, lavātum, }	<i>to wash.</i>
Pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	{ pōtum, or potātum, }	<i>to drink.</i>
Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	<i>to help.</i>
Cūbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubitum,	<i>to lie down.</i>
Dōmo,	domāre,	domui,	domitum,	<i>to subdue.</i>
Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	<i>to sound.</i>
Tōno,	tonāre,	tonui,	tonitum,	<i>to thunder.</i>
Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetitum,	<i>to forbid.</i>
Crēpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepītum,	<i>to make a noise.</i>
Mīco,	micāre,	micui,	——,	<i>to glitter.</i>
Frīco,	fricāre,	fricui,	frictum,	<i>to rub.</i>
Sēco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	<i>to cut.</i>
Nēco,	necāre,	{ necāvi, or necui, }	necātum,	<i>to kill.</i>
Lābo,	labāre,	——	——,	<i>to fall, or faint.</i>
Nexo,	nexāre,	——	——,	<i>to bind.</i>
Plīco,	plicāre,	——	——,	<i>to fold.</i>

What four compounds of *do* are conjugated like *do*?

*Circumdo*, *to surround*; *pessundo*, *to ruin*; *satisdo*, *to give surety*; and *venundo*, *to sell*, are conjugated like *do*.

To what conjugation do other compounds of *do* belong?

Other compounds of *do* belong to the third conjugation. These have *dīdi* in the perfect, and *dītum* in the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Addo,	addēre,	addīdi,	addītum,	<i>to add.</i>
Condo,	condēre,	condīdi,	condītum,	<i>to build.</i>
Reddo,	reddēre,	reddīdi,	reddītum,	<i>to return.</i>

What changes do compounds of *sto* make?

Compounds of *sto*, with a monosyllable, make the perfect *stīti*; with a dissyllable, *stēti*. Some have *stītum* and *stātum* in the supine, and many want the supine altogether; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Consto,	constāre,	constīti,	constītum,	<i>to consist.</i>
Præsto,	præstāre,	præstīti,	{ præstītum, præstātum, }	<i>to excel.</i>
Circumsto,	circumstāre,	circumstēti,	———	<i>to surround.</i>

How do the compounds of *plīco* differ from the simple verb?

Duplico, *to double*; multiplico, *to multiply*; replico, *to unfold*; and supplico, *to supplicate*, have regularly *āvi* and *ātum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Duplico,	duplicāre,	duplicāvi,	duplicātum,	<i>to double.</i>
Supplico,	supplicāre,	supplicāvi,	supplicātum,	<i>to supplicate.</i>

Other compounds of *plīco* have either *vi* and *ītum*, or *avi* and *ātum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Applico,	applicāre,	{ applicui, or applicavi,	{ applicītum, applicātum,	<i>to apply.</i>
Explico,	explicāre,	{ explicui, or explicāvi,	{ explicītum, explicātum,	<i>to unfold, explain.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the second conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the second conjugation are *eo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *ītum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monītum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Habeo,	habēre,	habui,	habītum,	<i>to have.</i>

In the compounds of *habeo*, what change is made?

The compounds of *habeo* change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Adhibeo,	adhibēre,	adhibui,	adhibītum,	<i>to admit.</i>
Prohibeo,	prohibēre,	prohibui,	prohibītum,	<i>to forbid.</i>

As a general rule, what verbs of the second conjugation want the supine?

Neuter verbs of the second conjugation which make *ui* in the perfect want the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Madeo,	madēre,	madui,	———	<i>to be wet.</i>
Splendeo,	splendēre,	splendui,	———	<i>to shine.</i>

Conjugate the verbs which are exceptions to this rule.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Caleo,	calēre,	calui,	calītum,	<i>to be hot.</i>
Careo,	carēre,	carui,	carītum,	<i>to want.</i>
Doleo,	dolēre,	dolui,	dolītum,	<i>to grieve.</i>
Jaceo,	jacēre,	jacui,	jacītum,	<i>to lie down.</i>
Lateo,	latēre,	latui,	latītum,	<i>to lie hid.</i>
Liceo,	licēre,	licui,	licītum,	<i>to be valued.</i>
Mereo,	merēre,	merui,	merītum,	<i>to deserve.</i>
Noceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocītum,	<i>to hurt.</i>
Pareo,	parēre,	parui,	parītum,	<i>to appear.</i>
Placeo,	placēre,	placui,	placītum,	<i>to please.</i>
Taceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacītum,	<i>to be silent.</i>
Valeo,	valēre,	valui,	valītum,	<i>to be in health.</i>

What is to be observed of *taceo*, both as respects its use and the change which it undergoes in composition?

*Taceo* is used transitively as well as intransitively. Its compounds change *a* into *i*, and these want the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Conticeo,	conticēre,	conticui,	———	<i>to keep silent.</i>
Reticeo,	reticēre,	reticui,	———	<i>to be silent.</i>

The compounds of *placeo* also change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Displiceo,	displacēre,	displacui,	displacītum,	<i>to displease.</i>

Conjugate the following verbs, which make their perfects and supines variously:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Doceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
Teneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	<i>to hold.</i>
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mistum, or } mixtum,	<i>to mix.</i>
Censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	<i>to think, judge.</i>
Torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>to roast, scorch.</i>
Sorbeo,	sorbēre,	sorbui,	sorptum,	<i>to sup.</i>
Timeo,	timēre,	timui,	——	<i>to fear.</i>
Sileo,	silēre,	silui,	——	<i>to be silent.</i>
Arceo,	arcēre,	arcui,	——	<i>to drive away.</i>
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>
Video,	vidēre,	vidi,	vīsum,	<i>to see.</i>
Sedeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>to sit.</i>
Strideo,	stridēre,	strīdi,	——	<i>to make a noise.</i>
Frendeo,	frendēre,	frendi,	fressum,	<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
Mordeo,	mordēre,	momordi,	morsum,	<i>to bite.</i>
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spospon-di,	sponsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tondeo,	tondēre,	totondi,	tonsum,	<i>to clip, shave.</i>
Foveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Moveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	<i>to move.</i>
Voveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	<i>to vow.</i>
Caveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>to beware of.</i>
Faveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>to favor.</i>
Paveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	——	<i>to be afraid.</i>
Ferveo,	fervēre,	ferbui,	——	<i>to boil.</i>
Conniveo,	connivēre,	{ connīvi, } or -ixi,	——	<i>to wink.</i>
Deleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	<i>to destroy.</i>
Compleo,	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	<i>to fill.</i>
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	<i>to weep.</i>
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	<i>to spin.</i>
Vieo,	viēre,	viēvi,	vietum,	<i>to hoop a vessel.</i>
Cieo,	ciēre,	(cīvi),	cītum,	<i>to stir up.</i>
Oleo,	olēre,	olui,	(olītum),	<i>to smell.</i>
Suadeo,	suadēre,	suasi,	suasum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Rideo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	<i>to laugh.</i>
Maneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to stay.</i>

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Hæreo,	hærêre,	hæsi,	hæsum,	<i>to stick.</i>
Ardeo,	ardêre,	arsi,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Tergeo,	tergêre,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
Mulceo,	mulcêre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to soothe.</i>
Mulgeo,	mulgêre,	mulsi,	{ mulsum, or { multum,	{ <i>to milk.</i>
Jubeo,	jubêre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgêre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Torqueo,	torquêre,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>to twist.</i>
Augeo,	augêre,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Urgeo,	urgêre,	ursi,	———	<i>to press.</i>
Fulgeo,	fulgêre,	fulsi,	———	<i>to shine.</i>
Turgeo,	turgêre,	tursi,	———	<i>to swell.</i>
Algeo,	algêre,	alsi,	———	<i>to be cold.</i>
Lugeo,	lugêre,	luxi,	———	<i>to mourn.</i>
Luceo,	lucêre,	luxi,	———	<i>to shine.</i>
Frigeo,	frigêre,	frixi,	———	<i>to be cold.</i>

What is to be observed of the compounds of *arceo*?

The compounds of *arceo* change *a* into *e*; and have a supine in *itum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Coerceo,	coercêre,	coercui,	coercitum,	<i>to restrain.</i>
Exerceo,	exercêre,	exercui,	exercitum,	<i>to exercise.</i>

What is to be observed of the compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*?

The compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo* do not double the first syllable of the perfect. *Impendo*, to overhang, has neither perfect nor supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Remordeo,	remordêre,	remorsi,	remorsum,	<i>to bite again.</i>
Impendo,	impendêre,	impendi,	impensum,	<i>to overhang.</i>
Propendo,	propendêre,	propendi,	propensum,	<i>to hang down.</i>
Despondeo,	despondêre,	despondi,	desponsum,	<i>to betroth.</i>
Respondeo,	respondêre,	respondi,	responsum,	<i>to answer.</i>
Detondeo,	detondêre,	detondi,	detonsum,	<i>to shear off.</i>

What verbs of the second conjugation want both the perfect and the supine?

Aveo,	<i>to desire.</i>	Liveo,	<i>to become livid.</i>
Denseo,	<i>to grow thick.</i>	Mæreo,	<i>to grieve.</i>
Flaveo,	<i>to be yellow.</i>	Renideo,	<i>to shine.</i>
Glabreo,	<i>to be smooth.</i>	Polleo,	<i>to be powerful.</i>
Hebeo,	<i>to be blunt.</i>	Scateo,	<i>to gush forth.</i>
Lacteo,	<i>to grow milky.</i>		

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the third conjugation?

Verbs of the third conjugation have no regular terminations, except in the present infinitive, which ends in *ĕre*. The perfects and supines are variously modified, as will be seen in the following list, which are arranged according to the termination of the present indicative.

#### IO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Facio,	facĕre,	fĕci,	factum,	<i>to do, make.</i>
Jacio,	jacĕre,	jĕci,	jactum,	<i>to throw.</i>
Aspicio,	aspicĕre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	<i>to behold.</i>
Allicio,	allicĕre,	allexi,	allectum,	<i>to allure.</i>
Fodio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	<i>to dig.</i>
Fugio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugitum,	<i>to flee.</i>
Capio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>to take.</i>
Rapio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
Sapio,	sapĕre,	sapui,	—	<i>to taste, be wise.</i>
Cupio,	cupĕre,	cupīvi,	cupitum,	<i>to desire.</i>
Pario,	parĕre,	pĕpĕri,	{ partum, or } paritum,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
Quatio,	quatĕre,	(quassi),	quassum,	<i>to shake.</i>

Which of the above verbs undergo a change in composition?

*Jacio*, *capio*, *rapio*, and *sapio*, when compounded, change *a* into *i*, as does *facio* when compounded with a preposition. Other compounds of *facio* retain the *a*. A few ending in *fico* and *ficor* are of the first conjugation; as,



PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Rejicio,	rejecĕre,	rejĕci,	rejectum,	to reject.
Excipio,	excipĕre,	excĕpi,	exceptum,	to except.
Corripio,	corripĕre,	corripui,	corruptum,	to seize.
Desipio,	desipĕre,	desipui,	———	to be foolish.
Afficio,	afficĕre,	affĕci,	affectum,	to affect.
Lucrifacio,	lucrificĕre,	lucrificĕi,	lucrifactum,	to make gain.
Amplifico,	amplificĕre,	amplificĕvi,	amplificĕtum,	to enlarge.
Gratificor,	gratificĕri,	gratificĕtus sum (dep.),		to gratify.

*Pario*, when compounded, changes *a* into *e*, and becomes of the fourth conjugation, but has *perui* in the perfect, except *comperio* and *reperio*, which have *peri*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Aperio,	aperĭre,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
Comperio,	comperĭre,	comperi,	compertum,	to know for certain.
Reperio,	reperĭre,	repĕri,	repertum,	to find.

The compounds of *quatio* take the form *cutio*, and have *cussi*, *cussum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Concutio,	concutĕre,	concussi,	concussum,	to shake violently.
Percutio,	percutĕre,	percussi,	percussum,	to strike.

#### UO.

Acuo,	acuĕre,	acui,	acŭtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argŭtum,	to prove.
Exuo,	exuĕre,	exui,	exŭtum,	to strip off clothes.
Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbŭtum,	to moisten.
Induo,	induĕre,	indui,	indŭtum,	to put on clothes.
Minuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minŭtum,	to lessen.
Spuo,	spuĕre,	spui,	spŭtum,	to spit.
Statuo,	statuĕre,	statui,	statŭtum,	to set, place.
Sternuo,	sternuĕre,	sternui,	sternŭtum,	to sneeze.
Suo,	suĕre,	sui,	sŭtum,	to sew.
Tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribŭtum,	to give.
Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.
Luo,	luĕre,	lui,	luŭtum,	to pay, wash.
Ruo,	ruĕre,	ruĭ,	ruŭtum,	to rush, fall.
Metuo,	metuĕre,	metui,	———	to fear.
Pluo,	pluĕre,	plui,	———	to rain.
Congruo,	congruĕre,	congrui,	———	to agree.
Ingruo,	ingruĕre,	ingrui,	———	to assail.
Annuo,	annuĕre,	annui,	———	to assent.

What is to be noted of the compounds of *luo* and *ruo*?

The compounds of *luo* and *ruo* drop *i* in the supine. *Corruo*, to fall together, and *irruo*, to rush on furiously, have no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Abluo,	abluĕre,	ablui,	ablūtum,	<i>to wash away.</i>
Diruo,	diruĕre,	dirui,	dirūtum,	<i>to overthrow.</i>
Corruo,	corruĕre,	corrui,	—	<i>to fall.</i>
Irruo,	irruĕre,	irruī,	—	<i>to rush on.</i>

*BO.*

Bĭbo,	bibĕre,	bĭbi,	bibĭtum,	<i>to drink.</i>
Scābo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
Lambo,	lamĕre,	lambi,	—	<i>to lick.</i>
Scribo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>to write.</i>
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>to veil, be married.</i>
Glūbo,	glubĕre,	—	—	<i>to skin, flay.</i>

*CO.*

Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>to say.</i>
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>to lead.</i>
Vīco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	<i>to conquer.</i>

Parco,	parcĕre,	{ peperci, or parsī,	{ parsum, or parcĭtum,	<i>to spare.</i>
Ico,	icĕre,	īci,	ictum,	
Cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>to grow.</i>

*SCO.*

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	<i>to know.</i>
Quiesco,	quescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	<i>to rest.</i>
Scisco,	sciscĕre,	scīvi,	scĭtum,	<i>to ordain.</i>
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>to be accustomed.</i>
Pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	<i>to feed.</i>
Disco,	discĕre,	didīci,	—	<i>to learn.</i>
Posco,	poscĕre,	poposci,	—	<i>to demand.</i>
Glisco,	gliscĕre,	—	—	<i>to glitter, grow.</i>

What is to be observed of *nosco* and *pasco*?

The future participle of *nosco* is *nosciturus*, from an old form of the supine. Its compounds make the supine in *itum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Agnosco,	agnoscĕre,	agnōvi,	agnĭtum,	<i>to own.</i>
Cognosco,	cognoscĕre,	cognōvi,	cognĭtum,	<i>to know.</i>

The compounds of *pasco* change *a* into *e*, make the perfect in *ui*, and have no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Compesco,	compescere,	compescui,	———	<i>to restrain.</i>
Dispesco,	dispescere,	dispescui,	———	<i>to separate.</i>

## DO.

Accendo,	accendere,	accendi,	accensum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
Cūdo,	cudere,	cūdi,	cūsum,	<i>to forge.</i>
Defendo,	defendere,	defendi,	defensum,	<i>to defend.</i>
Edo,	edere,	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>
Mando,	mandere,	mandi,	mansum,	<i>to chew.</i>
Prehendo,	prehendere,	prehensi,	prehensum,	<i>to take hold of.</i>
Scando,	scandere,	scandi,	scansum,	<i>to climb.</i>
Divido,	dividere,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Rādo,	radere,	rāsi,	rāsum,	<i>to shave.</i>
Claudo,	claudere,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>to close.</i>
Plaudo,	plaudere,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to applaud.</i>
Lūdo,	ludere,	lūsi,	lūsum,	<i>to play.</i>
Trūdo,	trudere,	trūsi,	trūsum,	<i>to thrust.</i>
Lædo,	lædere,	læsi,	læsum,	<i>to hurt.</i>
Rōdo,	rodere,	rōsi,	rōsum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
Vādo,	vadere,	———	———	<i>to go.</i>
Cēdo,	cedere,	cessi,	cessum,	<i>to yield.</i>
Pando,	pandere,	pandi,	{ passum, or } pansum,	<i>to open.</i>
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdi,	fūsum,	<i>to pour forth.</i>
Scindo,	scindere,	scīdi,	scissum,	<i>to cut.</i>
Findo,	findere,	fīdi,	fissum,	<i>to cleave.</i>
Tundo,	tundere,	tutūdi,	{ tunsum, or } tūsum,	<i>to beat.</i>
Cādo,	cadere,	cecīdi,	cāsum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Cædo,	cædere,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	<i>to cut, kill.</i>
Tendo,	tendere,	tetendi,	{ tensum, or } tentum,	<i>to stretch.</i>
Pendo,	pendere,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Crēdo,	credere,	credīdi,	credītum,	<i>to believe.</i>
Vendo,	vendere,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	<i>to sell.</i>
Abscendo,	abscondere,	abscondi,	abscondītum,	<i>to hide.</i>
Strīdo,	stridere,	strīdi,	———	<i>to creak.</i>
Rūdo,	rudere,	rūdi,	———	<i>to bray as an ass.</i>
Sīdo,	sidere,	sīdi,	———	<i>to sink down.</i>

What changes do some of the verbs in *do* of the third conjugation undergo when compounded?

1. The compounds of *claudo* change *au* into *ū*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Conclūdo,	concludēre,	conclūsi,	conclūsum, <i>to conclude.</i>
Reclūdo,	recludēre,	reclūsi,	reclūsum, <i>to shut back, open.</i>

2. The compounds of *plaudo* (except *applaudo* and *circumplaudo*) change *au* into *ō*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Explōdo,	explodēre,	explōsi,	explōsum, <i>to reject.</i>
Displōdo,	displodēre,	displōsi,	displōsum, <i>to stretch.</i>

3. The compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *ī*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Allīdo,	allidēre,	allīsi,	allīsum, <i>to dash against.</i>
Collīdo,	collidēre,	collīsi,	collīsum, <i>to dash together.</i>

4. The compounds of *vado* have the perfect and supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Evādo,	evadēre,	evāsi,	evāsum, <i>to escape.</i>
Invādo,	invadēre,	invāsi,	invāsum, <i>to invade.</i>

5. The compounds of *tundo* make *tūsi* and *tūsum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Contundo,	contundēre,	contūsi,	contūsum, <i>to bruise.</i>
Retundo,	retundēre,	retūsi,	retūsum, <i>to drive back.</i>

6. The compounds of *cādo* change *a* into *ī* short:

The compounds of *cædo* change *æ* into *ī* long; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Accīdo ( <i>cādo</i> ),	accīdēre,	accīdi,	——— <i>to happen.</i>
Accīdo ( <i>cædo</i> ),	accīdēre,	accīdi,	accīsum, <i>to cut about.</i>

Compounds of *cādo* have no supine, except

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Incīdo,	incīdēre,	incīdi,	incāsum, <i>to fall into.</i>
Occīdo,	occīdēre,	occīdi,	occāsum, <i>to fall down.</i>
Recīdo,	recīdēre,	recīdi,	recāsum, <i>to fall back.</i>

## GO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi,	cinctum,	to surround.
Fligo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fictum,	to dash.
Jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	to join.
Lingo,	lingĕre,	linxi,	linctum,	to lick.
Mungo,	mungĕre,	munxi,	munctum,	to wipe the nose.
Plango,	plangĕre,	planxi,	planctum,	to beat.
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Stinguo,	stinguĕre,	stinxi,	stinctum,	to dash out.
Sŭgo,	sugĕre,	suxi,	suctum,	to suck.
Tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	to cover.
Tinguo,	tinguĕre,	tinxi,	tinctum,	to dip.
Unguo,	unguĕre,	unxi,	unctum,	to anoint.
Surgo,	surgĕre,	surrexi,	surrectum,	to rise.
Pergo,	pergĕre,	perrexi,	perrectum,	to go forward.
Stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	to bind.
Fingo,	figĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	to paint.
Frango,	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	to break.
Ago,	agĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	to do, drive.
Tango,	tangĕre,	tetĭgi,	tactum,	to touch.
Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lĕgi,	lectum,	to gather, read.
Pungo,	pungĕre,	pupŭgi,	punctum,	to prick.
Pango,	pangĕre,	pauxi,	pactum,	to drive in.
Spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to spread.
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip, plunge.
Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.
Figo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	to fix.
Vergo,	vergĕre,	—	—	to lie toward.
Clango,	clangĕre,	clanxi,	—	to sound a trumpet.
Ningo,	ningĕre,	ninxi,	—	to snow.
Ango,	angĕre,	anxi,	—	to vex, pain.

What changes do some of the verbs in *go* make when compounded?

1. All the compounds of *fligo* are conjugated like *fligo*, except *profligo*, to dash down, which is a regular verb of the first conjugation.

2. The compounds of *rĕgo* change ĕ into ĭ; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Corrĭgo,	corrĭgĕre,	correxī,	correctum,	to correct.
Dirĭgo,	dirĭgĕre,	direxī,	directum,	to direct.

3. The compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Confringo,	confringĕre,	confrēgi,	confractum, to break to pieces.
Attingo,	attingĕre,	attīgi,	attactum, to touch gently.

4. The compounds of *āgo* (except *circumāgo*, to drive round; *perāgo*, to finish; *coāgo*, contracted into *cōgo*, to collect; and *satāgo*, to be busy) change *a* into *ī*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Abīgo,	abigĕre,	abēgi,	abactum, to drive away.

But *dēgo* (*de* and *ago*), to live; *prodīgo*, to lavish; *satāgo*, to be busy, want the supine. *Ambīgo*, to doubt, has neither perfect nor supine.

5. *Lēgo* (except when compounded with *ad*, *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub*) changes *e* into *ī*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Collīgo,	colligĕre,	collēgi,	collectum, to collect.

*Dilīgo*, to love; *intellīgo*, to understand; and *neglīgo*, to neglect, have *exi* and *ectum*. *Neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*.

6. The compounds of *pungo* are thus conjugated:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Compungo,	compungĕre,	compunxi,	compunctum, to sting.
Repungo,	repungĕre,	{repupūgi, or repunxi,}	repunctum, to prick again.

7. *Pango*, when it means to *bargain*, has the perfect *pepēgi*. Its compounds, which change *a* into *i*, have *pēgi* and *pactum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Compingo,	compingĕre,	compēgi,	compactum, to fasten together.

8. The compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Aspergo,	aspergĕre,	aspersi,	aspersum, to besprinkle.
Respergo,	respergĕre,	respersi,	respersum, to sprinkle back.

#### HO.

Trāho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum, to draw.
Vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum, to carry.



## LO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Cōlo,	colēre,	colui,	cultum,	<i>to till, inhabit.</i>
Consūlo,	consulēre,	consului,	consultum,	<i>to consult.</i>
Alo,	alēre,	alui,	{ alitum, or altum, }	<i>to nourish.</i>
Mōlo,	molēre,	molui,	molitum,	<i>to grind.</i>
Antecello,	antecellēre,	antecellui,	———	<i>to excel.</i>
Pello,	pellēre,	pepūli,	pulsum,	<i>to drive away.</i>
Fallo,	fallēre,	fefelli,	falsum,	<i>to deceive.</i>
Vello,	vellēre,	{ velli, or vulsi, }	vulsum,	<i>to pull.</i>
Sallo,	sallēre,	salli,	salsum,	<i>to salt.</i>
Psallo,	psallēre,	psalli,	———	{ <i>to play upon an instrument.</i>
Tollo,	tollēre,	sustūli,	sublātum,	<i>to lift up.</i>

What changes do some of the verbs in *lo* undergo in composition?

1. *Colo*, compounded with *ob*, changes *o* into *u*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Ocēūlo,	occulēre,	occului,	occultum, <i>to hide.</i>

*Accōlo*, to dwell near, and *circumcōlo*, to dwell round, have no supine.

2. Other compounds of the obsolete *cello*, like *antecello*, have no supine, except

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Percello,	percellēre,	percūli,	perculsum, <i>to strike, astonish.</i>

3. *Refello*, a compound of *fallo*, has no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Refello,	refellēre,	refelli,	——— <i>to confute.</i>

4. *Vello*, compounded with *de*, *di*, or *per*, has usually *velli* in the perfect. The other compounds have *velli* or *vulsi*.

5. *Attollo* and *entollo*, have no perfect or supine of their own, but are conjugated with perfects and supines from *fero*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Attollo,	attollēre,	attūli,	allātum, <i>to raise up.</i>



## MO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Frěmo,	freměre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	to rage, roar.
Gěmo,	geměre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	to groan.
Věmo,	voměre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	to vomit.
Trěmo,	treměre,	tremui,	———	to tremble.
Děmo,	deměre,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Prěmo,	proměre,	prompsi,	promptum,	to bring out.
Sěmo,	suměre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Cěmo,	coměre,	compsi,	comptum,	to deck, dress.
Emo,	eměre,	ěmi,	emptum,	to buy.
Prěmo,	preměre,	pressi,	pressum,	to press.

What is to be noted of *děmo*, *prěmo*, and *sěmo*?

*Děmo*, *prěmo*, and *sěmo* are compounds of *ěmo*. The other compounds of *emo* change *e* into *ĭ*, and are conjugated like the simple verb; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Adĭmo,	adiměre,	aděmi,	ademptum, to take away.

The compounds of *prěmo* likewise change *e* into *ĭ*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Comprĭmo,	comprimere,	compressi,	compressum, to press together.
Reprĭmo,	repriměre,	repressi,	repressum, to press back.

## NO.

Pōno,	poněre,	posui,	posĭtum,	to place.
Gigno,	gigněre,	genui,	genĭtum,	to beget.
Cāno,	caněre,	cecĭni,	cantum,	to sing.
Temno,*	temněre,	———	———	to despise.
Sperno,	sperněre,	sprēvi,	sprĕtum,	to disdain.
Sterno,	sterněre,	strāvi,	strātum,	to lay flat.
Sĭno,	siněre,	sĭvi, or sii,	sĭtum,	to permit.
Lĭno,	liněre,	lĭvi, or lēvi,	lĭtum,	to anoint.
Cerno,	cerněre,	crēvi,	crĕtum,	to see, decree.

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *cāno*, *temno*, and *sterno*?

1. The compounds of *cāno* change *a* into *ĭ*, and have *cinui* and *centum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Concĭno,	conciněre,	concinui,	concentum, to sing in concert.

Most of the compounds of *cāno* have no supine, and many have neither perfect nor supine.

---

\* *Contemno* has, perfect, *contempsĭ*; supine, *contemptum*.

2. Compounds of *temno* have both perfect and supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Contemno,	contemnere,	contempsi,	contemptum, <i>to despise.</i>

3. The compounds of *sterno* are conjugated like the simple verb. Two of them, however, *consterno* and *externo*, when they have a mental application, and signify to *alarm*, are of the first conjugation; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Consterno,	consternere,	constravi,	constratum, <i>to strew thickly.</i>
Consterno,	consternare,	consternavi,	consternatum, <i>to alarm.</i>

### PO, QUO.

Carpō,	carpere,	carpsi,	carptum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
Clēpō,	clepere,	clepsi,	cleptum,	<i>to steal.</i>
Rēpō,	repere,	repsi,	reptum,	<i>to creep.</i>
Scalpō,	scalpere,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	<i>to engrave.</i>
Sculpō,	sculpere,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	<i>to carve.</i>
Serpō,	serpere,	serpsi,	serptum,	<i>to creep.</i>
Strēpō,	strepere,	strepui,	strepitum,	<i>to make a noise.</i>
Rumpō,	rumpere,	rūpi,	ruptum,	<i>to break.</i>
Cōquo,	coquere,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>to boil.</i>
Linquo,	linquere,	liqui,	—	<i>to leave.</i>

What changes do some of the verbs in *po* and *quo* undergo when compounded?

1. The compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Discerpo,	discerpere,	discerpsi,	discerptum, <i>to tear to pieces.</i>

2. The compounds of *linquo* have a supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.
Delinquo,	delinquere,	deliqui,	delictum, <i>to fail.</i>
Relinquo,	relinquere,	reliqui,	relictum, <i>to forsake.</i>

### RO.

Quæro,	quærere,	quæsi,	quæsitum,	<i>to seek.</i>
Tëro,	terere,	trivi,	tritum,	<i>to wear away.</i>
Verro,	verrere,	verri,	versum,	<i>to sweep.</i>
Uro,	urere,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Curro,	currere,	cucurri,	cursum,	<i>to run.</i>
Gëro,	gerere,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>to carry.</i>
Füro,	furere,	—	—	<i>to be mad.</i>
Sëro,	serere,	sëvi,	sätum,	<i>to sow.</i>

What is to be remarked of *quæro*, *curro*, and *sëro*?

1. *Quæro*, when compounded, changes *æ* into *î*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Acquiro,	acquirere,	acquisîvi,	acquisitum,	<i>to acquire.</i>
Conquiro,	conquirere,	conquisîvi,	conquisitum,	<i>to seek after.</i>

2. *Curro*, when compounded with *circum*, *re*, *sub*, and *trans*, seldom takes the reduplication; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Accurro,	accurrere,	accurri,	accursum,	<i>to run to.</i>
Recurro,	recurrere,	recurri,	recursum,	<i>to run back.</i>

3. The compounds of *sëro* which relate to *planting* and *sowing* have *sëvi*, *situm*; those of a different signification have *serui*, *sertum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Consëro,	conserere,	consëvi,	consitum,	<i>to plant together.</i>
Assëro,	asserere,	asserui,	assertum,	<i>to claim.</i>

#### SO.

Arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessîvi,	arcessitum,	<i>to call, send for.</i>
Capesso,	capessere,	capessîvi,	capessitum,	<i>to take up.</i>
Facesso,	facessere,	facessîvi,	facessitum,	<i>to do, go away.</i>
Lacesso,	lacessere,	lacessîvi,	lacessitum,	<i>to provoke.</i>
Incesso,	incessere,	incessi,	———	<i>to attack.</i>
Viso,	visere,	vîsi,	———	<i>to go to visit.</i>
Depso,	depsere,	depsui,	depstum,	<i>to knead.</i>
Pinso,	pinsere,	{ pinsui, or pinsi,	{ pinsum, pistum, pinsitum,	<i>to bake.</i>

#### TO.

Flecto,	flectere,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i>
Plecto,	plectere,	plexi and plexui,	plexum,	<i>to plait.</i>
Necto,	nectere,	nexi and nexui,	nexum,	<i>to tie, knit.</i>
Pecto,	pectere,	pexi and pexui,	pexum,	<i>to dress, comb.</i>
Mëto,	metere,	messui,	messum,	<i>to reap.</i>
Pëto,	petere,	petîvi,	petitum,	<i>to seek.</i>
Mitto,	mittere,	mîsi,	missum,	<i>to send.</i>
Verto,	vertere,	verti,	versum,	<i>to turn.</i>
Sterto,	stertere,	stertui,	———	<i>to snore.</i>
Sisto,	sistere,	stîti,	statum,	<i>to stop.</i>

What is to be remarked of *verto* and *sisto*?

1. The compounds of *verto* are conjugated like the simple verb; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Converto,	convertĕre,	converti,	conversum,	<i>to turn to.</i>

But *reverto*, *diverto*, and *præverto* have corresponding dependent forms, which are thus conjugated:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Revertor,	reverti,	reversus sum,	<i>to turn back.</i>
Divertor,	diverti,	diversus sum,	<i>to turn aside.</i>
Prævertor,	præverti,	præversus sum,	<i>to outrun, prefer.</i>

2. *Sisto*, in the sense of *stand still*, has neither perfect nor supine. Its compounds have *stīti* and *stītum*, but seldom the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Assisto,	assistĕre,	astīti,	astītum,	<i>to stand by.</i>

#### VO, XO.

Vivo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	<i>to live.</i>
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	solūtum,	<i>to loose.</i>
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	volutum,	<i>to roll.</i>
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	texum,	<i>to weave.</i>

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the fourth conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the fourth conjugation are *io*, *īre*, *īvi*, *ītum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	<i>to fortify.</i>

Conjugate the following, which are exceptions:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Singultio,	singultīre,	singultīvi,	singultum,	<i>to sob.</i>
Sepelio,	sepelīre,	sepelīv	sepultum,	<i>to bury.</i>
Venio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	<i>to come.</i>
Veneo,	venīre,	venii,	—	<i>to be sold.</i>
Salio,	salīre,	{ salui, or } { salii, }	saltum,	<i>to leap.</i>

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Amicio,	amicīre,	{ amicui, <i>or</i> } { amixi,	amictum,	<i>to clothe.</i>
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	<i>to bind.</i>
Sancio,	sancīre,	{ sanxi, <i>or</i> } { sancīvi,	sanctum, <i>or</i> } sanctum,	<i>to ratify.</i>
Cambio,	cambīre,	campsi,	campsum,	<i>to change money.</i>
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	<i>to inclose.</i>
Haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	{ haustum, <i>or</i> } { hausum,	<i>to draw out.</i>
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	<i>to feel.</i>
Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	rausum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	<i>to mend, repair.</i>
Farcio,	farcīre,	farsi,	fartum,	<i>to cram.</i>
Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	<i>to prop.</i>
Fērio,	ferīre,	_____	_____	<i>to strike.</i>

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *salio* and *farcio*?

1. The compounds of *salio* change *a* into *i*; and in the supine into *u*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Desilio,	desilīre,	desilui, <i>or</i> desilii,	desultum,	<i>to leap down.</i>
Transilio,	transilīre,	transilui, <i>or</i> transilii,	transultum,	<i>to leap across.</i>

2. The compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Refercio,	refercīre,	refersi,	refertum,	<i>to fill up.</i>

How are the perfect and supine of *ferio* supplied?

The perfect and supine of *ferio* are supplied from *percutio*, to strike: *percussi*, *percutsum*.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

Are there any irregularities in the conjugation of deponent verbs of the first conjugation?

All deponent verbs of the first conjugation are regular, and are conjugated like the passive voice of *amo*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Adulor,	adulāri,	adulātus,	<i>to flatter.</i>
Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus,	<i>to endeavor.</i>
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus,	<i>to admire.</i>
Suspīcor,	suspīcāri,	suspīcātus,	<i>to suspect.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the second conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Fateor,	fatēri,	fassus,	<i>to confess.</i>
Liceor,	licēri,	licītus,	<i>to bid a price.</i>
Medeor,	medēri,	—	<i>to cure.</i>
Mereor,	merēri,	merītus,	<i>to deserve.</i>
Misereor,	miserēri,	miserītus, or misertus,	<i>to pity.</i>
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicītus,	<i>to promise.</i>
Reor,	rēri,	rātus,	<i>to think.</i>
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuītus, or tūtus,	<i>to protect.</i>
Vereor,	verēri,	verītus,	<i>to fear.</i>

What change is made in the compounds of *fateor*?

The compounds of *fateor* change *a* into *i*; and in the supines into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Confiteor,	confitēri,	confessus,	<i>to confess.</i>

But *diffiteor*, to deny, has no perfect participle.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the third conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Apiscor,	apisci,	aptus,	<i>to get.</i>
Expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	<i>to awake.</i>
Fruor,	frui,	frūitus, or fructus,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
Gradior,	grādi,	gressus,	<i>to go.</i>
Lābor,	lābi,	lapsus,	<i>to fall, slide.</i>
Lōquor,	lōqui,	locūtus,	<i>to speak.</i>
Morior,	{ mōri, or } { morīri, }	mortuus,	<i>to die.</i>
Nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	<i>to obtain.</i>
Nascor,	nasci,	nātus,	<i>to be born.</i>
Nītor,	nīti,	nīsus, or nixus,	<i>to strive.</i>
Obliviscor,	oblivisci,	oblītus,	<i>to forget.</i>
Paciscor,	pacisci,	pactus,	<i>to bargain.</i>
Patior,	pāti,	passus,	<i>to suffer.</i>
Proficiscor,	proficisci,	profectus,	<i>to depart.</i>

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Quëror,	quëri,	questus,	<i>to complain.</i>
Sëquor,	sëqui,	secütus,	<i>to follow.</i>
Ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	<i>to avenge, punish.</i>
Utor,	ütî,	üsus,	<i>to use.</i>

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *apiscor*?

*Adispicor* and *indipiscor*, to obtain, make the perfect participle *adeptus*, *indeptus*.

What is to be remarked of *moriör* and *nascör*?

The future participles of *moriör* and *nascör* have *iturus*; as, *moriturus*, *nasciturus*.

Conjugate the following verbs, which want the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	
Defitiscor,	defitisci,	<i>to be weary.</i>
Irascor,	irasci,	<i>to be angry.</i>
Liquor,	liqui,	<i>to melt.</i>
Reminiscor,	reminisci,	<i>to remember.</i>
Ringor,	ringi,	<i>to grin like a dog.</i>
Vescor.	vesci,	<i>to feed.</i>

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the fourth conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Assentior,	assentiri,	assensus,	<i>to assent.</i>
Experior,	experiri,	expertus,	<i>to try.</i>
Mëtior,	metiri,	ensus,	<i>to measure.</i>
Oppërior,	opperiri,	opertus,	<i>to wait for.</i>
Ordior,	ordiri,	orsus,	<i>to begin.</i>
Orior,	oriri,	ortus,	<i>to rise.</i>

What is to be remarked of *orior*?

*Orior* in some of its parts belongs to the fourth conjugation, and in others to the third. Its future participle is *oriturus*.



## THINGS USEFUL TO BE KNOWN.

---

### ROMAN ARMY.

- 1 Century = 100 men.
- 2 Centuries = 200 men = 1 Maniple.
- 3 Maniples = 600 men = 1 Cohort.
- 10 Cohorts = 6,000 men = 1 Legion.

The Century was seldom full, so that the Legion usually consisted of less than 6,000 men. Ordinarily it was between 3,000 and 5,000, or about 4,000 men.

- 1 *Decuria* = 10 horsemen.
- 3 *Decuriæ* = 30 horsemen = 1 Turma.
- 10 *Turmæ* = 300 horsemen = the Cavalry of a Legion.

The *Velites* were light-armed troops, who fought in scattered parties as occasion demanded, usually in front of the lines, and were the first to engage.

A *Consular Army* consisted of 2 Legions, together with the allied horse and foot; in all about 20,000 men.

In time of battle the army was drawn up in three lines:

1. The *Hastati*, young men in the flower of life;
2. The *Principes*, men of middle age, in the vigor of life;
3. The *Triarii*, old soldiers of approved valor.

The *Centurio Primi Pili*, or simply *Primus Pilus*, was the chief centurion.

A *Decurio* was the commander of 10 horsemen.

The *Dux Turmæ* commanded the whole body of horsemen.

The *Præfectus* was commander of the allies.

A *Military Tribune* commanded about 1,000 men.

The *Quæstor* was the treasurer and paymaster of the army.

The whole army was commanded by a *Consul* in person, or by his lieutenant-general, called a *Legatus*.

The *Prætorium* was the general's tent.

The *Cohors Prætoria* was the general's body-guard.

*Exercitus* is the army in camp, or in general.

*Agmen*, the army on the march.

*Acies*, the army drawn up for battle.

The camp had four gates. The two principal ones were:

1. The *Porta Prætoria*, in front, toward the enemy;
2. The *Porta Decumana*, at the back, from the enemy.

## TIME.

### 1. DAY AND NIGHT.

The Romans divided the day, from sunrise to sunset, into twelve hours.

They divided the night, from sunset to sunrise, into four watches.

### 2. MONTHS.

The Romans did not divide their months into weeks, but reckoned by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. Nor did they reckon forward, as we do, but *backward*; that is, in reckoning from the *Kalends* to the *Nones* they said it was so many days *before* the *Nones*; from the *Nones* to the *Ides*, so many days *before* the *Ides*; and from the *Ides* to the end of the month, so many days *before* the *Kalends* of the next month.

The *Kalends* were the first day of the month.

The *Nones* the fifth; nine days before the *Nones* (including both).

The *Ides* the thirteenth, which nearly divided the month into two equal parts.

But in March, May, July, and October the *Nones* fell two days later: that is, on the 7th; consequently, in the same months, the *Ides* fell on the 15th.

The day before each of these divisions was called *Pridie*; thus the 4th of January was called *pridie nonas Januarii*; the 14th of March, *pridie ides Martii*; and the 31st of October, *pridie kalendas Novembris*.

To turn Roman time into ours, if the day be between the *Kalends* and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and *Ides*:

RULE.—Add 1 to the latter division, and subtract the given day.

Example: What is the 4th day before the *Nones* of January?

(*Nones*)  $5 + 1 = 6$ , and  $6 - 4 = 2$ d of January. *Ans.*

What is the 7th day before the *Ides* of March?

(*Ides*)  $15 + 1 = 16$ , and  $16 - 7 = 9$ th of March. *Ans.*

If the day be between the Ides and the Kalends:

RULE.—Add 2 to the number of days in the month named, and subtract the given day.

*Example:* What is the 10th day before the Kalends of January?

(January)  $31 + 2 = 33$ , and  $33 - 10 = 23$ d of December. *Ans.*

What is the 12th day before the Kalends of September?

(September)  $30 + 2 = 32$ , and  $32 - 12 = 20$ th of August. *Ans.*

A *Lustrum* was a period of *five* years.

### ROMAN MONEY.

An *As*, a copper coin, was worth about 1 cent 5 mills.

A *Sestertius*, silver, was worth about . . 3 cents 8 mills.

A *Denarius*, silver, was worth about . 15 cents 5 mills.

NOTE.—A *Sestertius* was a coin; a *Sestertium*, a sum of money = 1,000 *Sestertii* = \$38.

Large sums were usually reckoned by *Sestertia*.

### MEASURES.

A *Passus* was about *five* feet.

A *Roman Mile* (*Mille Passus*) = 5,000 feet, a little less than our mile (5,280 feet).

A *Jugerum* was about five eighths of an acre.

# AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

## A MANUAL

OF THE

## ART OF PROSE COMPOSITION,

By JOHN M. BONNELL, D. D.

In the preparation of this work, it has been no part of the compiler's aim to be original. He has sought rather to select from the various treatises on this subject those rules and exercises which have been approved by the experience of teachers, and to combine them into one consistent whole, arranged with reference to the progressive development of the learner's powers.—*Extract from the Preface.*

The author disclaims originality, and yet is more original than nine tenths of less modest writers. The volume bears evident marks of being the work of a practical and experienced teacher. As a whole it comes nearer to our idea of what a manual on this subject should be for the ordinary classes of students in our Academies and High Schools than any other that we have seen.—*American Educational Monthly, New York, March, 1868.*

The result of practical thought in the class-room, it is precisely such a series of illustrations and views of the subject as most teachers have found it necessary to prepare for themselves.—*The Round Table, New York, March, 1868.*

It is a capital work in plan and execution, and worthy of introduction into our best institutions of learning.—*N. Lawrence Lindsley, Lebanon, Tenn.*

It is just the book that is needed in our schools. It is admirable for its conciseness, its comprehensiveness, the accuracy of its definitions, and the appropriateness of its examples.—*W. Shelton, President West Tennessee College.*

I consider it an admirable compilation. The arrangement of the whole work is philosophical, and the chapters on Invention and Expression are very complete.—*Charles Taylor, President Kentucky Wesleyan University.*

A treatise well calculated to serve as a text-book in schools and colleges, and at the same time just such a guide as very many of our young professional and business men greatly need.—*J. Berrien Lindsley, Chancellor University of Nashville.*

I am very well pleased with it. The plan is excellent, and I think the execution well sustained.—*John A. Waddell, LL. D., Chancellor University of Mississippi.*

A text-book of rare merit.—*R. D. Mallory, Union Female Academy, Eufaula, Ala.*  
I have long wanted just such a help in the school-room.—*A. L. Hamilton, Pres't Andrew Female College, Cuthbert, Ga.*

We consider it superior to any other work of the kind which has ever come under our notice.—*Georgie A. Hulse McLeod, Southern Literary Institute, Baltimore.*

It is decidedly the most complete and exhaustive treatise that I have seen.—*W. H. Stuart, Columbia, Ky.*

Retail Price, . . . . . \$1.50.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,

PUBLISHERS,

156 AND 158 WEST MAIN STREET, LOUISVILLE, KY.

# AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

## BRONSON'S SYSTEM OF ELOCUTION; OR, MENTAL AND VOCAL PHILOSOPHY,

Involving the principles of READING AND SPEAKING, and designed for the development and cultivation of BODY AND MIND, in accordance with the NATURE, USES, AND DESTINY OF MAN, illustrated by some *three hundred* choice Anecdotes, *three thousand* Oratorical and Poetical Readings, *five thousand* Proverbs, Maxims, and Laconics, and *several hundred* Engravings. It contains:

I. All the principles of Elocution, in accordance with Physiological and Mental Science. II. *Six full length Views* of the Nerves of Organic Life, of Respiration, of the Nerves of Sense and Motion, and of all the Muscles and Bones of the whole Body, clothed and unclothed. III. Natural and Deformed Chests, Positions of Ladies and Gentlemen—of their Bodies, Hands, Arms, and Feet, and *one hundred* full length Oratorical and Poetical Portraits. IV. *Forty-four Mouths*, showing every position to produce the *forty-four sounds* of our Language. V. The Common, and the New Mode of learning the Letters—of Spelling, and of Teaching Children to Read—involving the Science of Phonology. VI. Several hundred Jaw or Muscle-breakers, for Training the Voice—while “Laughter holds both of his sides.” VII. *Fifty engravings*, exhibiting all the Phases of Passion, with appropriate examples to illustrate them. VIII. An immense number of Questions and Subjects suggested for Lyceums, Debating Societies, and Social Parties. IX. The largest and best collection of *Readings, Recitations, and Declamations*. X. It is expressly prepared for use in all *Schools, Academies, and Colleges*, Male and Female; and also with particular reference to Private Readers and Learners.

### ITS COMPARATIVE MERITS.

I. An examination of its contents and their arrangement will enable one to institute a comparison between this work and all others on the same subject.

II. It is in perfect harmony with what is known of all that is NATURAL, HUMAN, and DIVINE.

III. Its foundations are deeply laid in the Philosophy of Mind and Voice—Spirit and Matter; and the principles are of a far-reaching and comprehensive nature.

IV. Its method is that of ANALYSIS and SYNTHESIS, and is altogether progressive and practical in its characteristics.

V. Although but ONE Elocutionary principle is presented, specifically, on any page, yet each Elementary page contains, incidentally, ALL the principles of Elocution.

VI. These principles have never been known to fail, when faithfully applied, to enable one to read and speak, for hours in succession, without hoarseness or injurious exhaustion.

VII. It is *beautifully* and *substantially* gotten up in octavo form, of between three and four hundred pages, and includes a greater variety of Prose and Poetry than any other system of Elocution, and contains *double* the amount of reading matter found in any similar work in the United States.

Retail Price, . . . . . \$2.00.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,  
156 AND 158 W. MAIN ST., LOUISVILLE, KY.,  
PUBLISHERS.

# AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

---

## TOWNE'S SERIES OF MATHEMATICS,

BY P. A. TOWNE,

FORMERLY GENERAL PRINCIPAL OF BARTON ACADEMY, MOBILE, ALABAMA,

CONSISTING OF

TOWNE'S PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. 144 pp.

TOWNE'S INTERMEDIATE ARITHMETIC. 216 pp.

TOWNE'S PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 360 pp.

TOWNE'S ALGEBRA. 290 pp.

### CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES.

1. Clear and exhaustive definitions.
2. Early introduction of *Decimal Fractions*
3. Improved operations in solving problems.
4. Its *models* for recitations.
5. Its clear and brief analyses.
6. The beautiful typography of the whole series.

Teachers throughout the country may be assured that the books of the series yet to appear, namely: MENTAL ARITHMETIC, GEOMETRY, TRIGONOMETRY, ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY AND CALCULUS will fall in no respect behind those now before the public. When complete the series will, it is believed, present the fullest and most perfect account of mathematical science yet published.

Copies of the above books will be furnished Teachers and School Committees for examination at half the respective retail prices, and favorable arrangements will be made for introduction in place of other works not in satisfactory use.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,

156 AND 158 WEST MAIN STREET,

LOUISVILLE, KY.,

PUBLISHERS.



# AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

## The FIRST PRINCIPLES OF GEOLOGY,

PRESENTING THE SCIENCE IN ITS PHYSICAL AND MORAL ASPECTS,  
AND EXHIBITING ITS APPLICATION TO THE ARTS OF MINING,  
AGRICULTURE, ARCHITECTURE, AND ENGINEERING.

By WILLIAM J. BARBEE, A. M., M. D.

MEMBER OF THE AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE PROMOTION OF SCIENCE.

The work is illustrated with Engravings, and a Geological Map of the United States. It is divided into five parts:

**PART I.** contains an account of the Elements of the Globe—their combinations to form Mineral substances; and presents an Exposition of Geological Dynamics. **PART II.** contains a Classification of Rocks, and a Description of the different Formations. **PART III.** treats of the Moral Bearings of Geology. **PART IV.** treats of Geographical Geology. **PART V.** exhibits the Application of Geology to certain useful Arts.

The following, among numerous testimonials, are presented for the inspection of Teachers:

It evinces a thorough knowledge of the science, and is admirably adapted to schools and colleges.—*President Hitchcock.*

I can cheerfully commend it to all who desire an accurate knowledge of the general principles of Geology. I hope the work will be a success.—*President Barnard, University of Mississippi.*

The author displays profound acquaintance with his favorite department of science and a masterly ability for logical discussion.—*Southern Literary Messenger.*

Dr. BARBEE has written what very few men have ever attempted—an able and interesting work on Geology. Able works there were, but scarcely any of them attractive.—*Christian Intelligencer.*

One of the best books on Geology ever issued from any press in Europe or America.—*N. Y. Christian Advocate.*

The subjects are all treated with marked ability.—*National Quarterly Review.*

A most excellent Southern college text-book. May the number of such increase.—*DeBow's Review.*

We need not look to the North, nor to England, for text-books, when the South can produce such a work as Dr. BARBEE has prepared.—*Nashville Medical Journal.*

In treating the Moral Bearings of the science the author presents ten strong arguments for the antiquity of the globe—shows there is no conflict between Scripture and Geology, and directs attention to the proofs of Divine goodness and wisdom.—*Princeton Review.*

One of the most logical works on Geology we ever perused.—*N. Y. Churchman.*

I very fully approve of your work on Geology, and will soon give it an extended notice.—*T. Fanning, President of Franklin College, Tennessee.*

The new edition of Dr. BARBEE'S work on Geology is an able and interesting treatise.—*P. S. Fall, Nashville. Tenn.*

It is the best book of the kind I have seen; remarkable for clearness and simplicity of style, and admirably suited for the use of schools.—*Prof. I. H. Alexander, Kosciusko, Miss.*

It is a most excellent text-book. The style is pure, and the arrangement faultless.—*Prof. I. L. Dyson, Lexington, Miss.*

It is a capital book, and I wish to see it introduced in our schools.—*President T. S. Gathright, of Somerville Institute.*

I like it better than Hitchcock, and will introduce it next session.—*Prof. S. J. Reid, of Holly Springs, Miss.*

I am greatly pleased with BARBEE'S GEOLOGY, and expect to introduce it as a text-book in our school.—*R. T. P. Allen, Sup't Military Institute, Kentucky.*

Retail Price, . . . . . \$1.75.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,  
PUBLISHERS.













LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 325 A

